

EXHIBIT 6, Part A

Express Mail Label No. EL550340765US

05-01-00

A

**UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL
(Large Entity)**

(Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 CFR 1.53(b))

Docket No.
7905.15

Total Pages in this Submission

TO THE ASSISTANT COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTSBox Patent Application
Washington, D.C. 20231

Transmitted herewith for filing under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) and 37 C.F.R. 1.53(b) is a new utility patent application for an invention entitled:

**METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY
REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION**

and invented by:

**Danne L. Buchanan
William Ronald Titus**If a **CONTINUATION APPLICATION**, check appropriate box and supply the requisite information:☐ Continuation ☐ Divisional ☐ Continuation-in-part (CIP) of prior application No.: _____

Which is a:

☐ Continuation ☐ Divisional ☐ Continuation-in-part (CIP) of prior application No.: _____

Which is a:

☐ Continuation ☐ Divisional ☐ Continuation-in-part (CIP) of prior application No.: _____

Enclosed are:

Application Elements

1. ☒ Filing fee as calculated and transmitted as described below
2. ☒ Specification having fifty-two (52) pages and including the following:
 - a. ☒ Descriptive Title of the Invention
 - b. ☐ Cross References to Related Applications (if applicable)
 - c. ☐ Statement Regarding Federally-sponsored Research/Development (if applicable)
 - d. ☐ Reference to Microfiche Appendix (if applicable)
 - e. ☒ Background of the Invention
 - f. ☒ Brief Summary of the Invention
 - g. ☒ Brief Description of the Drawings (if drawings filed)
 - h. ☒ Detailed Description
 - i. ☒ Claim(s) as Classified Below
 - j. ☒ Abstract of the Disclosure

UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL (Large Entity)

(Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 CFR 1.53(b))

Docket No.
7905.15

Total Pages in this Submission

Application Elements (Continued)

3. ☒ Drawing(s) (when necessary as prescribed by 35 USC 113)
 - a. ☒ Formal Number of Sheets fifteen (15)
 - b. ☐ Informal Number of Sheets _____
4. ☒ Oath or Declaration
 - a. ☒ Newly executed (original or copy) ☐ Unexecuted
 - b. ☐ Copy from a prior application (37 CFR 1.63(d)) (for continuation/divisional application only)
 - c. ☒ With Power of Attorney ☐ Without Power of Attorney
 - d. ☐ DELETION OF INVENTOR(S)
Signed statement attached deleting inventor(s) named in the prior application, see 37 C.F.R. 1.63(d)(2) and 1.33(b).
5. ☐ Incorporation By Reference (usable if Box 4b is checked)
The entire disclosure of the prior application, from which a copy of the oath or declaration is supplied under Box 4b, is considered as being part of the disclosure of the accompanying application and is hereby incorporated by reference therein.
6. ☐ Computer Program in Microfiche (Appendix)
7. ☐ Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Submission (if applicable, all must be included)
 - a. ☐ Paper Copy
 - b. ☐ Computer Readable Copy (identical to computer copy)
 - c. ☐ Statement Verifying Identical Paper and Computer Readable Copy

Accompanying Application Parts

8. ☒ Assignment Papers (cover sheet & document(s))
9. ☐ 37 CFR 3.73(B) Statement (when there is an assignee)
10. ☐ English Translation Document (if applicable)
11. ☐ Information Disclosure Statement/PTO-1449 ☐ Copies of IDS Citations
12. ☐ Preliminary Amendment
13. ☒ Acknowledgment postcard
14. ☒ Certificate of Mailing

☐ First Class ☒ Express Mail (Specify Label No.): EL550340765US

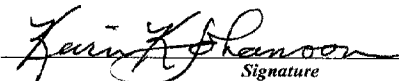
**UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL
(Large Entity)***(Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 CFR 1.53(b))*Docket No.
7905.15

Total Pages in this Submission

Accompanying Application Parts (Continued)15. ☐ Certified Copy of Priority Document(s) *(if foreign priority is claimed)*16. ☐ Additional Enclosures *(please identify below):***Fee Calculation and Transmittal****CLAIMS AS FILED**

For	#Filed	#Allowed	#Extra	Rate	Fee
Total Claims	32	- 20 =	12	x \$18.00	\$216.00
Indep. Claims	4	- 3 =	1	x \$78.00	\$78.00
Multiple Dependent Claims (check if applicable) <input type="checkbox"/>					\$0.00
BASIC FEE					\$690.00
OTHER FEE (specify purpose) <u>Assignment Recordation Fee</u>					\$40.00
TOTAL FILING FEE					\$1,024.00

- ☒ A check in the amount of **\$1,024.00** to cover the filing fee is enclosed.
- ☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge and credit Deposit Account No. **23-3178** as described below. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.
- ☐ Charge the amount of _____ as filing fee.
- ☒ Credit any overpayment.
- ☒ Charge any additional filing fees required under 37 C.F.R. 1.16 and 1.17.
- ☐ Charge the issue fee set in 37 C.F.R. 1.18 at the mailing of the Notice of Allowance, pursuant to 37 C.F.R. 1.311(b).


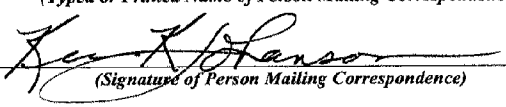


Signature

Kevin K. Johanson
 Registration No. 38,506
WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
 60 East South Temple
 1000 Eagle Gate Tower
 Salt Lake City, Utah 84111
 Telephone: (801) 533-9800
 Facsimile: (801) 328-1707

Dated: April 28, 2000

cc:

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY "EXPRESS MAIL" (37 CFR 1.10) Applicant(s): Danne L. Buchanan and William Ronald Titus			Docket No. 7905.15	
Serial No.	Filing Date April 28, 2000	Examiner	Group Art Unit	
Invention: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION				
<div style="text-align: right; margin-bottom: 20px;">  </div> <p>I hereby certify that this <u>Utility Patent Application (including the items listed below)</u> <i>(Identify type of correspondence)</i></p> <p>is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 in an envelope addressed to: The Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C.</p> <p>20231-0001 on <u>April 28, 2000</u> <i>(Date)</i></p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 20px;"> <u>Kevin K. Johanson</u> <i>(Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Correspondence)</i>  <i>(Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence)</i> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <u>EL550340765US</u> <i>("Express Mail" Mailing Label Number)</i> </div>				
<p style="text-align: center;">Note: Each paper must have its own certificate of mailing.</p> <p>Transmitted: Utility Patent Application (52 pgs.) Utility Patent Application Transmittal Letter (3 pgs.) Formal Drawings (15 sheets) Declaration, Power of Attorney, and Petition (3 pgs.) Assignment including Recordation Form Cover Sheet (4 pgs.) Check No. <u>115184</u> in the amount of \$1,024.00 Certificate of Mailing by Express Mail Label No. EL550240765US Postcard</p>				

Express Mailing Label No. EL417646426US

PATENT APPLICATION
Docket No.: 7905.15

UNITED STATES PATENT APPLICATION

of

Danne L. Buchanan

and

William Ronald Titus

for

**METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL
INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE
FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION**

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. The Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to physical financial instrument processing. More particularly, the present invention relates to a method and system for remotely processing checks through electronic interaction between the physical location of the instrument and a financial institution.

2. Related Applications

The act of depositing or otherwise converting a financial instrument such as a check, draft, or other instrument has generally required the physical presentment of the instrument by the bearer to a financial institution such as a bank, credit union, or other institution authorized to accept and process monetary instruments. Indeed, the depositing and clearing of checks has heretofore involved individuals or organizations physically taking their deposit, such as in the form of a check, to financial institutions or trusted remote institutional branches, otherwise known as the bank of first deposit, where the deposit may be accepted, and credited to the bank customer's account, of course, subject to the check "clearing" with the maker financial institution.

Financial institutions have developed methods for reducing the amount of paper flow associated with checks within their organizations, however, their target has not been to reduce processing costs, improve the timeliness of the money collection from other financial institutions, and reduce costs associated with handling, storing and returning paper checks to the maker. Therefore, it would be an advancement to provide a new system centered on electronic information that does not require the use of paper items for any purpose.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 Therefore, it would be advantageous to provide an electronic processing system
2 and method that could provide a bearer of a check the convenience to “deposit” a check
3 at a facility, such as a home or office, that is not a traditional bank or bank branch
4 facility.

5 It would also be advantageous to provide a method and system for allowing the
6 remote depositing and processing a check that does not require the physical routing of the
7 actual check in order to accomplish the various post-deposit processing of a check. It
8 would yet be a further advantage to provide a method and system for improving the
9 collection time involved with the funds represented by the check (i.e., reduce credit
10 “float”).

11 It would be a benefit to provide a method and system for reducing expenses
12 associated with the transportation costs involved in sending the checks from the bank of
13 first deposit to the maker financial institution.

14 It would also be a benefit to provide a method and system for reducing the check
15 storage expenses incurred by the bank of first deposit.

16 It would be a further benefit to enable the bank of first deposit to reduce the
17 staffing, facilities (i.e., physical buildings), and equipment required to accept and process
18 physical checks.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100
101
102
103
104
105
106
107
108
109
110
111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371
372
373
374
375
376
377
378
379
380
381
382
383
384
385
386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434
435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443
444
445
446
447
448
449
450
451
452
453
454
455
456
457
458
459
460
461
462
463
464
465
466
467
468
469
470
471
472
473
474
475
476
477
478
479
480
481
482
483
484
485
486
487
488
489
490
491
492
493
494
495
496
497
498
499
500
501
502
503
504
505
506
507
508
509
510
511
512
513
514
515
516
517
518
519
520
521
522
523
524
525
526
527
528
529
530
531
532
533
534
535
536
537
538
539
540
541
542
543
544
545
546
547
548
549
550
551
552
553
554
555
556
557
558
559
560
561
562
563
564
565
566
567
568
569
570
571
572
573
574
575
576
577
578
579
580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597
598
599
600
601
602
603
604
605
606
607
608
609
610
611
612
613
614
615
616
617
618
619
620
621
622
623
624
625
626
627
628
629
630
631
632
633
634
635
636
637
638
639
640
641
642
643
644
645
646
647
648
649
650
651
652
653
654
655
656
657
658
659
660
661
662
663
664
665
666
667
668
669
670
671
672
673
674
675
676
677
678
679
680
681
682
683
684
685
686
687
688
689
690
691
692
693
694
695
696
697
698
699
700
701
702
703
704
705
706
707
708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722
723
724
725
726
727
728
729
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752
753
754
755
756
757
758
759
760
761
762
763
764
765
766
767
768
769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812
813
814
815
816
817
818
819
820
821
822
823
824
825
826
827
828
829
830
831
832
833
834
835
836
837
838
839
840
84

11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

2

1 for research and re-depositing of the check if this becomes necessary. The depositor
2 retains the deposit slips and monetary item(s) at the remote site.

3 As an alternative to the interactive process of passing voiding, endorsing, unique
4 number information back and forth between the central site and the remote site, it will be
5 possible (based on parameters set in the inventive software) to do most of the decision-
6 making on the remote site processor before transmitting the check information to the
7 central site. This can be done by pre-loading the endorsement, voiding, and item
8 numbering information on the remote site processor and/or updating on a regular basis.
9 This allows for checks to be endorsed, voided and item numbered and the image(s)
10 associated with a check deposit to be created and passed to the central site without the
11 need for interactive validation of data between the remote and central sites.

12 In addition to deposits, decisions based on remote site information, the present
13 invention also allows deposits of any number, combination, and dollar amounts of
14 deposit, and checks based upon decisions made regarding the customer by information
15 stored at the central site. This information can be loaded onto the central site and
16 communicated to the remote processor as part of the interactive exchange of data during
17 the process of validating the deposit. Additionally, this information while being pre-
18 loaded on the remote processor can also be updated on a regular basis.

19 Once complete deposit data is received by the central site processor at the bank of
20 first deposit's central site, it is passed to the central site's check processing, deposit, and
21 cash management, etc., systems for processing. As an alternative, if the remote site or
22 central site is being used as a collection center for deposits from other institutions, the
23 deposit information can be passed to the other institutions check processing, deposit, and
24 cash management, etc., systems for processing. The image of the checks can be used to

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 either print the customer statements (for items drawn on the bank of first deposit or
2 routed through the normal check clearing paths (i.e. directly to clearing and
3 correspondent banks or through the FRB electronic clearing process). If the maker or
4 maker bank(s) require physical checks for their internal purposes, a duplicate check is
5 printed by either the bank of first deposit's central site, or the maker bank or by the maker
6 banks FRB.

7 Once received by the maker bank, the check image or duplicate printed check is
8 processed by the maker bank through their computer systems and included as per their
9 policies in their customer statements. Checks returned to the depositor for any reason
10 will take the reverse path back to the depositor. Any re-depositing of items by the
11 original depositor is done using the either the printed duplicate paper item (if there is one)
12 or the original endorsed image created and stored at the bank of first deposit's central
13 site.

14 All transmission of data preferably undergoes digital signature verification and
15 certification and data encryption to ensure privacy and confidentiality of the data being
16 transmitted. In addition, the check images will be stored on a document storage database
17 at the remote site or bank of first deposit as well as Internet enabled and accessible
18 database(s). The information on these database(s) will be available to the depositor and
19 research personnel at the bank of first deposit's central site under security control through
20 remote access such as Internet access.

21 The system includes computer hardware, computer software, apparatus, and
22 methodology that enables individuals, businesses, and all types of organizations (both for
23 profit and non-profit) to capture and securely transmit check images (including, but not
24 limited to, personal checks, business checks, travelers checks, money orders, merchant

1 coupons, food coupons, line of credit checks, etc.), deposit information, and other
2 information from remote locations (i.e., locations that could include the financial
3 institution's remote locations, other financial institution's locations, businesses, private
4 residences, etc.), for the purpose of having those checks credited to the depositing
5 individual's or organization's bank account(s) and having the check images (and/or
6 physical checks) entered into the bank check clearing channels for ultimate delivery to
7 the maker bank for payment out of the maker's account.

8 These and other objects and features of the present invention will become more
9 fully apparent from the following description and appended claims, or may be learned by
10 the practice of the invention as set forth hereinafter.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 **BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

2 A more extensive description of the present invention, including the above-recited
3 features, advantages, and objects, will be rendered with reference to the specific
4 embodiments that are illustrated in the appended drawings. Because these drawings
5 depict only exemplary embodiments, the drawings should not be construed as imposing
6 any limitation on the present invention's scope. As such, the present invention will be
7 described and explained with additional specificity and detail through use of the
8 accompanying drawings in which:

9 Figure 1 illustrates an overview of a process of capturing and processing deposits
10 from financial institutions and their branches which can be adapted to incorporate some
11 of the features of the present invention;

12 Figure 2 illustrates an overview of remotely capturing and processing deposits
13 remote from a financial branch or bank, in accordance with a preferred embodiment of
14 the present invention;

15 Figure 3 is a more detailed block diagram showing the capturing and processing
16 at the remote site or point of check presentment, in accordance with a preferred
17 embodiment of the present invention;

18 Figure 4 illustrates central site processing of image data as captured at the remote
19 site, in accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

20 Figure 5 illustrates processing at the maker or payor institution site, in accordance
21 with a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

22 Figure 6 illustrates a processing diagram of the interaction between entities of the
23 present invention; and

24 Figure 7 is a process flowchart of check processing of the present invention.

1 **DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS**

2 The invention is described below with reference to drawings. These drawings
3 illustrate certain details of specific embodiments that implement the systems and methods
4 of the present invention. However, describing the invention with drawings should not be
5 construed as imposing, on the invention, any limitations that may be present in the
6 drawings. The present invention contemplates both methods and systems for remotely
7 accepting a check for deposit and electronically processing the deposit without physically
8 routing the physical paper copy of the check. The embodiments of the present invention
9 may comprise a special purpose or general purpose computer including various computer
10 hardware, the execution unit portion of which may also be known herein as a
11 “processor.”

12 Embodiments within the scope of the present invention also include computer-
13 readable media for carrying or having computer-executable instructions or data structures
14 stored thereon and also known as software. Such computer-readable media can be any
15 available media which can be accessed by a general purpose or special purpose computer.
16 By way of example, and not limitation, such computer-readable media can comprise
17 RAM, ROM, EPROM, EEPROM, CD-ROM or other optical disk storage, magnetic disk
18 storage or other magnetic storage devices, or any other medium which can be used to
19 carry or store desired program code means in the form of computer-executable
20 instructions or data structures and which can be accessed by a general purpose or special
21 purpose computer. When information is transferred or provided over a network or
22 another communications connection (either hardwired, wireless, or a combination of
23 hardwired or wireless) to a computer, the computer properly views the connection as a
24 computer-readable medium. Thus, any such a connection is properly termed a computer-

1 readable medium. Combinations of the above should also be included within the scope
2 of computer-readable media. Computer-executable instructions comprise, for example,
3 instructions and data which cause a general purpose computer, special purpose computer,
4 or special purpose processing device to perform a certain function or group of functions.
5 Computer-executable instructions may also be properly termed "software" as known by
6 those of skill in the art.

7 Although not required, the invention will be described in the general context of
8 computer-executable instructions, such as program modules, being executed by
9 computers in network environments. Generally, program modules include routines,
10 programs, objects, components, data structures, etc. that perform particular tasks or
11 implement particular abstract data types. Computer-executable instructions, associated
12 data structures, and program modules represent examples of the program code means for
13 executing steps of the methods disclosed herein. The particular sequence of such
14 executable instructions or associated data structures represent examples of corresponding
15 acts for implementing the functions described in such steps.

16 Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the invention may be practiced in
17 network computing environments with many types of computer system configurations,
18 including personal computers, hand-held devices, multi-processor systems,
19 microprocessor-based or programmable consumer electronics, network PCs,
20 minicomputers, mainframe computers, and the like. The invention may also be practiced
21 in distributed computing environments where tasks are performed by local and remote
22 processing devices that are linked (either by hardwired links, wireless links, or by a
23 combination of hardwired or wireless links) through a communications network. In a
24

1 distributed computing environment, program modules may be located in both local and
2 remote memory storage devices.

3 An exemplary system for implementing the portions of the invention includes a
4 general purpose computing device in the form of a conventional computer, including a
5 processing unit, a system memory, and a system bus that couples various system
6 components including the system memory to the processing unit. The system memory
7 may include read only memory (ROM) and random access memory (RAM). The
8 computer may also include a magnetic hard disk drive for reading from and writing to a
9 magnetic hard disk, a magnetic disk drive for reading from or writing to a removable
10 magnetic disk, and an optical disk drive for reading from or writing to removable optical
11 disk such as a CD-ROM or other optical media. The drives and their associated
12 computer-readable media provide nonvolatile storage of computer-executable
13 instructions, data structures, program modules and other data for the computer.

14 Program code or software means comprising one or more program modules may
15 be stored on the hard disk, magnetic disk, optical disk, ROM or RAM, including an
16 operating system, one or more application or software programs, other program modules,
17 and program data.

18 The computer may operate in a networked environment using logical connections
19 to one or more remote computers having processors. Logical connections may include a
20 local area network (LAN) and a wide area network (WAN) that are presented here by
21 way of example and not limitation. Such networking environments are commonplace in
22 office-wide or enterprise-wide computer networks, intranets and the Internet.

23 It should also be pointed out that while the term "check" may be generically used
24 herein, it is contemplated by the inventors that other financial instruments are also

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 contemplated within this meaning and therefore, the use of the term “check” is assumed
2 to have the broader meaning, both in the specification and the claims.

3 Additionally, the term “bank of first deposit” means the financial institution
4 sponsoring the remote site and which owns or employs a central site for processing
5 financial transactions.

6 Referring to Figure 1, a bank of first deposit 101 receives a check from the bearer
7 to begin processing the instrument. Bank of first deposit 101 actually forwards, in step
8 113, the physical check(s) to a central site 102 for additional physical processing of the
9 actual check. The physical check is processed at central site 102 using a reader/sorter
10 (not separately shown but included in 102) to acquire information such as the information
11 stored on the Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) line. This information
12 includes the maker bank number, the account number, a check serial number, etc. The
13 information from the check is then sent to an in-house computer system (included in
14 102) for posting in steps 114, 115 to the appropriate bearer account(s) 103, 104 in the
15 bank of first deposit 101. If the check is an on us item (i.e. an item that is drawn on the
16 bank that is processing it), the check is retained in a step 117 at storage 105 at bank of
17 first deposit 101, otherwise the check is sent in steps 116 and 119 or, alternatively in step
18 118 into a maker bank 108 for collection of funds. The check(s) are either sent
19 physically in step 118 directly to maker bank 108 or routed in steps 116 and 119 through
20 a Federal Reserve Banks (FRB) 106 and 107 check clearing processes to a maker bank
21 108.

22 The path taken by the check is determined by the working agreement that bank of
23 first deposit 101 has with maker bank 108. If maker bank 108 is a member of the local
24 clearing-house association (thereby being a clearing bank), the checks can be exchanged

1 directly with maker bank 108. If the maker bank 108 is a correspondent bank (a bank
2 that has agreed to exchange checks directly with the bank of first deposit) the checks can
3 be sent directly to maker bank 108. All other checks are forwarded in steps 116 and 119
4 to the FRBS, 106 and 107 for exchange with maker bank 108. If a check is not paid by
5 maker bank 108 for any reason (i.e. it is a forgery, there are not sufficient funds in the
6 makers account to cover the amount of the check, etc.) the check is returned to the
7 depositor using the reverse path. Once the check is received by maker bank 108, the
8 check is processed in step 121 through the maker bank's check capture system 109.
9 Information from the check is then sent in steps 122 and 123 to the maker bank's
10 accounting systems 110 and 111 and the checks are either stored in step 124 at the maker
11 bank's check storage 112, or sent directly to the maker with their check statement.

12 Figure 2 depicts a high-level processing diagram of the various entities involved
13 in the overall financial processing of the present invention, in accordance with the
14 preferred embodiment. The present invention comprises three primary processing
15 entities: (i) a remote site 197, (ii) a central site 198, and (iii) a maker bank site 199. Each
16 of these sites enlists specific processing techniques which furthers the novel financial
17 instrument processing technique of the present invention.

18 In the present invention, a remote site processor 201 (further detailed in Figure 3)
19 either autonomously, or under operator/depositor control initially remotely "processes" a
20 check into electronic check data both in the form of image data and informational data
21 which can be further processed and approved at subsequent portions of the overall
22 process. In essence, the remote site provides a processing front-end that electronically
23 interacts via interface 202 with central site 198 through the transfer of electronic check
24 data for review and processing by electronic means at a central site. Remote site 197

1 performs functions relating to the physical check including scanning, reading, and
2 printing on the checks. Remote site 197 also exchanges image and/or authorization data
3 with the other entities as further described below.

4 Central site 198 of Figure 2 interacts via interfaces 207, 208 with maker bank site
5 199 for completing the clearing process relating to the check or related instrument.
6 Central site 198 is comprised of a central site processor 203 which coordinates
7 verification and account interaction. Central site 198 also provides both electronic
8 storage of image and information data as well as providing an interface to maker bank
9 site 199. Central site 198 provides image conversion technology for converting check
10 data from electronic form back to a hard copy check format for processing, printing, and
11 archiving when required by more traditional banking processes. Otherwise, a system 205
12 may process the image of the check in image format. System 205 prevents the need to
13 reprint the check and send the duplicate check through the check reader sorters.

14 Maker bank site 199 performs more traditional account processing of information
15 received from central site 198 such as from central site Federal Reserve Bank 106.
16 Maker bank site 199 is further comprised of maker bank FRB 107 and maker bank 108
17 and engages in account processing and statement generation.

18 Figure 3 depicts the remote site as well as the interaction by a depositor or
19 operator, in accordance with a preferred embodiment. The present invention commences
20 with the presentation of a physical instrument such as a check by a bearer to remote site
21 197. A remote scanner/reader/printer 309 provides the interface to the bearer for
22 presentment of the check. Remote scanner/reader/printer 309, in the preferred
23 embodiment, is a multifunction device capable of independently performing each of the
24 functions of scanning, reading, and printing upon the check or physical financial

1 instrument. It is also contemplated that individual devices for performing each of these
2 functions, scanning-reading-printing, may be integrated, whether automatically or
3 manually, to perform the combination of functions upon the check.

4 Remote scanner/reader/printer 309 is connected via an interface 310 to remote
5 processor 201. Remote site processor 201, like each of the other processor elements in
6 the present invention, may be comprised of execution-capable devices, and is preferably
7 comprised of a computer, such as a personal, network, or general purpose computer.
8 Remote processor 201 is further coupled to central site processor 203 via an interface
9 transmission or network media 202, which may take the form of one or more of wired or
10 wireless media such as public switched lines, Internet or wide-area network connection,
11 microwave, satellite, digital phone, private leased lines, or any other current or future
12 acceptable communications facility and may further employ include encryption over the
13 interface.

14 Remote site processor 201 executes according to executable instructions such as
15 computer-executable instructions which are figuratively depicted in Figure 3 as software
16 313. Software 313 is loaded or interfaces with remote processor 201 via a bus or other
17 physical interface depicted as interface 312. Generally, software 313 is comprised of
18 executable instructions for (i) causing remote site processor 201 to instruct and execute
19 the necessary steps for capturing the check or financial instrument both physically and
20 electronically, (ii) performing requisite data processing on the electronic data from the
21 capturing step, and (iii) exchanging the captured data over interface or media 202 to
22 central site processor 203 when appropriate.

23 While details relating to the processing and method steps executed by remote site
24 processor 201 via software 313 are described below, remote site processor 201 further

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 determines if remote processing decisional information such as comparison information
2 for making decisions on the number of deposits, dollar amount of deposits or dollar
3 amount of monetary items is available on remote site processor 201. If such decisional
4 information is not available at remote site 197, then central site check processing may
5 require additional steps. Remote site processor 201 also determines if the remote
6 processing information needed to void, endorse and itemize number each check 303 is
7 available to remote processor 201 for processing of check 303, according to the method
8 of the present invention. If such remote processing information is available but not
9 current, the remote processing information may be updated by either having the updated
10 information manually entered, for example by way of an operator via a keyboard at
11 terminal 301 attached to remote processor 201, or the updated information may be
12 retrieved by remote processor 201, under the direction of software 313, from central site
13 processor 203.

14 In a preferred embodiment, the updated information may be housed in a data set
15 at central site processor 203 and updated by the bank of first deposit, affiliated with
16 remote site 197 prior to loading to remote site processor 201. Remote site processor 201,
17 executing software 313, then determines if all of the decisions concerning voiding,
18 endorsing, item numbering, number of deposits, number of checks or dollar sizes of
19 deposits or items can be made by remote site processor 201 by checking the remote
20 processing information as pre-defined in remote site processor 201.

21 If the decisions on endorsing, voiding, item numbering, number of deposits,
22 number or dollar amounts of deposits or monetary items can be made by remote site
23 processor 201, then to ensure proper account processing of check 303, a depositor at
24 terminal 301 is lead through a series of instructions to gather deposit information required

1 to ensure credits are made to the appropriate deposit accounts(s). In one preferred
2 embodiment, the deposit information is read, interpreted and entered automatically by
3 reader/scanner/printer 309. In another embodiment, the deposit information is entered
4 manually on, for example, terminal 301 attached to remote site processor 201.
5 Additionally, during the practice of the invention, scanner/reader/printer 309 encodes
6 check 303 with endorsement and voiding information in order to physically "void" check
7 303, thereby keeping check 303 from being re-transmitted, for example over media 202,
8 or re-deposited at an actual financial institution location for an additional collection. In
9 addition, a unique item identification number may be encoded on check 303 by remote
10 site processor 201 via scanner/reader/printer 309 to aid in tracking data resulting from
11 processing of check 303.

12 The process of the present invention continues when scanner/reader/printer 309
13 performs the functions of scanning check 303 to create electronic check data comprised
14 of image data, informational data including MICR encoding (using either MICR, Optical
15 Character Recognition (OCR) or other like techniques). Scanner/reader/printer 309
16 "voids" check 303 by endorsing check 303 and printing tracking data thereon. The
17 electronic image data and informational data such as MICR information of the voided
18 and endorsed check 303 is transferred over interface 310 to remote site processor 201 for
19 processing which includes image integrity verification. When the image integrity is
20 suspect, the integrity is enhance by either rescanning check 303 or, alternatively, by
21 manual intervention by an operator at terminal 301. If check 303 is rescanned,
22 scanner/reader/printer 309 does not reprint the endorsement, voiding and item numbering
23 information on check 303.

24

1 Once the electronic image data and the MICR encoding for the first check 303 is
2 determined to be readable and accurate, remote site processor 201 determines if this
3 process should be repeated for additional deposits and/or monetary item(s). When
4 remote site processor 201 determines that processing by scanner/reader/printer 309 of
5 individual check(s), under the direction of remote site processor 201 has ended and that
6 the information is complete and ready for transmission via interface/media 202, remote
7 site processor 201 formats the electronic image data and the MICR encoding and adds
8 any additional control information in preparation for transmission to central site
9 processor 203. The physical check 305 is stored in file 305 at the remote site. In
10 addition, the check image is stored on the remote site processor (*i.e.*, magnetic disk, cd
11 rom, etc. not shown on drawing.) Communications between remote site processor 201
12 and central site processor 203 preferably incorporates digital signature
13 verification/certification performed by process 311 and data encryption performed by
14 process 313 to ensure confidentiality.

15 Figure 4 depicts the central site processor and the various processes and interfaces
16 associated therewith, in accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present
17 invention. While the accuracy of electronic check data transferred from remote site
18 processor 201 to central site processor 203 will generally retain its integrity through the
19 transmission, when electronic check data received by central site processor 203, as
20 evaluated and processed by computer-executable instructions or software loaded therein,
21 is incomplete or inaccurate, or if the image data is not readable, central site processor 203
22 communicates with remote processor 201 giving detailed information to an operator at
23 terminal 301 concerning the need for additional information to restore image information
24 or complete incomplete or inaccurate data. Depending upon the type of missing or

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 otherwise incorrect information, corrected or supplemental information may be supplied
2 by an operator at terminal 301 at remote site 197. It may even be necessary to re-scan
3 check(s) 303 and re-transmit at least portions of the check data including image and/or
4 MICR data to central site processor 203. If check 303 is re-scanned, then endorsement,
5 voiding and item number information are not reprinted on check 303.

6 Once central site processor 203 determines the new check data received for the
7 deposit is accurate and complete, central site processor 203 stores the check image and
8 MICR data of check(s) 303 along with any additional associated information such as time
9 that deposit was captured, who the customer was who captured the deposit, item number,
10 etc. as received from remote site 201. Central site processor 203 confirms receipt of
11 accurate information by sending a notification reply to remote site processor 201 freeing-
12 up remote site processor 201 for further processing of subsequent remote check deposit
13 interactions. In alternate embodiments, central site processor 203 may store image data
14 on an Internet-enabled check image document storage 405 thereby allowing access by the
15 depositor/operator from a terminal such as terminal 301, their designee, or the financial
16 institution of first deposit. It should be pointed out that because of present banking
17 processes, the remote site should still be associated with a chartered financial institution
18 that is authorized to accept the checks from the remote site and process them through
19 normal check clearing paths. The remote site may be a branch extension of the financial
20 institution or may be a person, or other entity with or without a legal relationship to the
21 financial institution that provides the access services to the financial institution. Such an
22 affiliated financial institution is still known as the bank of first deposit. The present
23 embodiment does not propose eliminating the bank of first deposit, only replacing the
24 method used to capture deposits. Central site processor 203 maintains authentication and

1 data integrity at check image document storage 405 through the use of digital signature
2 verification and certification, as well as via data encryption as shown in processes 314
3 and 315.

4 Referring back to Figure 3, in another embodiment, if the decisions of endorsing,
5 voiding, item numbering, number of deposits number or checks or dollar amounts of
6 deposits or monetary items cannot be made by remote site processor 201, for example,
7 when the telecommunications line goes down and the decision information cannot be
8 updated on the remote site processor, or when the central site processor is inoperable, or
9 the specific remote site is not authorized to make these decisions (i.e. we will determine
10 and pass that information to the remote site processor when the remote site processor
11 contacts the central site processor prior to accepting deposit information at the remote
12 site), then remote site processor 201 leads a depositor at for example terminal 301
13 through a series of instructions to gather deposit information required to ensure credits
14 are made to the appropriate deposit accounts(s) 104. This can be done by either using the
15 reader/scanner/printer 309 or by entering the necessary information on the terminal 301
16 attached to remote processor 201.

17 Then, check 303 is placed into the scanner/reader/printer 309 where the item is
18 scanned, the MICR encoding is read preferably using either MICR or Optical Character
19 Recognition (OCR) techniques, and an electronic image is created of check 303. The
20 electronic image data and informational data such as MICR information is transferred
21 from scanner/reader/printer 309 onto remote site processor 201 where remote site
22 processor 201 edits and confirms that the electronic check data is readable. If the
23 electronic check data is not readable or correct, the check data is corrected at the direction
24 of remote site processor 201 by either re-scanning check 303 or having a remote site

1 operator manually key the information in using terminal 301 or other interface device
2 attached to remote site processor 201.

3 Once the check data is determined to be readable and accurate, remote site
4 processor 201 then formats the scanned check data and adds additional control
5 information in preparation for transmission to central site processor 203 and the alternate
6 embodiment approach concludes.

7 Returning to Figure 4, after receipt of valid and accurate check data, if it is
8 determined that the maker bank or maker of the check requires a physical item, the check
9 image is printed in process 401 and then processed through the central site check image
10 capture system 205. If a physical item is not required, the image is sent to the check
11 image capture system 205. In either case, the check image capture system 205 interfaces
12 with the central site 198 deposit systems 103, cash management systems 104, etc. for
13 posting information. The central site then forwards either the printed duplicate check or
14 check image to the maker bank 108. This can be done directly through path 208 if the
15 bank of first deposit's central site 198 has an agreement with maker bank 108 to
16 exchange checks directly, or if the maker bank and the central site bank of first deposit do
17 not have an exchange agreement then through FRBs 106, 107 through path 207.

18 Figure 5 depicts the various component and processes of the maker bank site, in
19 accordance with the preferred embodiments of the present invention.

20 The maker bank 108 receives either images of the original paper items 303 or
21 printed duplicates of the original paper items 303 either directly from the bank of first
22 deposit's central site through path 208 or from the central site Federal Reserve Bank
23 (FRB) 106 clearing process through path 206 (Figure 4), 207, 120.

24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 Central site FRB 106 will process the check images or paper items through their
2 capture system and forward the images or paper items to the maker bank FRB 107
3 through path 207. The maker bank FRB then processes the items or images through their
4 check capture system 504 through path 503 and if necessary, (*i.e.*, when paper duplicate
5 of item has not already been printed by the bank of first deposit), print a duplicate of the
6 original check 303 image if a paper item is required by maker bank 108. A maker bank
7 FRB 107 will then forward the printed items or images to the maker bank 108 via
8 communications or transportation path depicted as path 120. Maker bank 108 will then
9 process the image or paper item though their in-house application systems depicted by
10 deposit system 110, print check image process, 509, check system process, and customer
11 statement process 506 through paths 122, 507, 508, 121, 505, and 507.

12 These in house systems are not to be taken as systems that all banks will have or
13 use for this process. They are meant to represent the in house processing by maker banks
14 to post monetary items to their accounting systems and to send the items (either image or
15 printed duplicate of original items) to the check maker.

16 Figure 6 is an interface diagram depicting a high level description of the
17 interactions between the various components of the present invention, in accordance with
18 a preferred embodiment.

19 In the preferred embodiment, the remote site operator enters deposit information
20 into the remote processor then inserts a draft in a step 601 at the scanner/reader/printer
21 located at the remote site. The scanner/reader/printer reads the item, digitizes and
22 validates the check image information and passes it to the software on the remote site
23 processor in a step 602. The remote site processor software receives the digitized data
24 from the scanner/reader/printer and validates data to ensure that the check information is

1 readable and valid in a step 603. When the image is ready for transmission to the central
2 site. The remote site processor contacts the transmission facility and, incorporating
3 digital signature verification and certification and data encryption software to ensure
4 confidentiality, transmits in a step 604 the item image and control information to the
5 central site. The central site receives the transmitted data and edits and in a step 611
6 verifies the check data for completeness and content.

7 When the central site has determined the check image and other associated data
8 (relating to both the check image and data, and the deposit information) is complete and
9 accurate and meets the deposit and/or item dollar limits, the central site stores the
10 electronic image of the check and any additional associated information received from
11 the remote site, and then confirms in a step 605 receipt of good information by sending to
12 the remote site information needed to endorse the physical check and to void the physical
13 item to keep it from being re-transmitted or deposited at a physical financial institution
14 location for collection. In addition, a unique item identification number can be
15 transmitted to the inventive software on the remote site processor for printing on the
16 physical checks as a tracking and research mechanism. The invention allows for printing
17 of the unique item number if it is determined by the bank employing the present
18 invention that it is desirable to print the unique item number for tracking and research
19 purposes.

20 After the inventive software on the remote processor receives specific information
21 required to void, endorse, and print the unique item number, the remote site processor
22 and the scanner/reader/printer will pass the check again where the remote site will print in
23 a step 606 the information on the physical item at the locations required by the rules
24 governing automated check processing. The item is also scanned in a step 607 again

1 under the direction of the remote site inventive software and the new image (containing
2 endorsement, voiding and item number information), and associated additional
3 information required by the inventive software for tracking and control purposes, is
4 edited in a step 608 for accuracy and completeness and if correct is then transmitted in a
5 step 609 to the central site by the remote site using the transmission facility set up for this
6 purposes.

7 If the data is not readable or correct, the information is corrected at the direction
8 of the remote site by either re-scanning the item or having the remote site operator key
9 the information in using the terminal attached to the remote site processor. If the item is
10 rescanned at this point, the endorsement, voiding and item number information is not
11 reprinted by the scanner/reader/printer. When the image is ready for transmission to the
12 central site, the remote site processor contacts the transmission facility and, incorporating
13 digital signature verification and certification, and data encryption software to ensure
14 confidentiality, transmits in a step 609 the item image and control information to the
15 central site.

16 The central site receives the transmitted updated image data and edits in a step
17 613 for completeness and content. If the data is incomplete or inaccurate, or if the image
18 data is not readable, the central site communicates, with the remote processor and gives
19 detailed information to the operator concerning the need for additional information to
20 complete the inaccurate data or image information. Based on the specific need, this
21 information can be supplied using the terminal on the remote site processor or by re-
22 scanning the physical item and re-transmitting it to the central site. In either case, this
23 information is supplied under the direction of the remote site processor. Such additional
24 information is transmitted to the central site processor from the remote site processor. If

1 the physical item is rescanned at this point, the endorsement, voiding and item number
2 information is not reprinted by the scanner/reader/printer.

3 Once the central site determines the new data received for the deposit is accurate
4 and complete, the central site stores in a step 618 the updated image of the physical item
5 (on the database(s) maintained by the bank of first deposit's central site for this purpose)
6 along with any additional associated information received from the remote site, and then
7 confirms receipt in a step 610 of good information by sending a notification to the remote
8 site that the process for that specific deposit is complete unless more items are present in
9 a step 615 and allows for termination of the transmission of information or for the same
10 process to be followed for other items in a step 614 in that deposit or for another deposit
11 in a step 616.

12 In another embodiment of the invention, the central site stores the check image(s)
13 on an Internet enabled documents storage system allowing access by the depositor, their
14 designee, or the central site processing center of the bank of first deposit. The central site
15 for storing check images and associated information preferably employees incorporating
16 digital signature verification and certification, and data encryption to ensure
17 confidentiality.

18 If the check is removed from the scanner/reader/printer prematurely, at any time
19 during the process of capturing and transmitting data from the remote site, the transaction
20 information associated with that check will be considered invalid and not part of the
21 deposit. The depositor will need to re-scan and re-enter data associated with that check.

22 The remote site operator will have the option at the remote site to release deposit
23 information to the central site for processing. This can be done after either a completion
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 of single deposit in step 615 (containing one or more checks) or after completion of all
2 deposits in step 616 (each containing one or more checks) from the remote site.

3 After the deposit(s) from a specific remote site are complete, the central site
4 formats deposit information for processing in the accounting systems of the bank of first
5 deposit's central site in a step 619, including sending the image and other appropriate
6 information for application processing in step 620 (including deposit accounting systems,
7 MICR capture, cash management processing, float processing, etc.,).

8 If an item is an "on us" item, the central site determines that a physical check is
9 required by the maker, that information is relayed to the central site and an identical
10 image or facsimile of the original item can be printed by either the central site processor
11 or by the item capture system in step 619.

12 If the maker bank is a clearing or correspondent bank then the bank of first
13 deposit will determine if the maker bank requires a paper or image item. If the maker
14 bank requires a paper item, then the bank of first deposit's central site will print an exact
15 duplicate of the paper item and route in step 621 the item to the maker bank. The
16 duplicate printed item will generally be as exact as possible based on the quality of the
17 original image. If the maker bank does not require a paper item then the bank of first
18 deposit will route the check image to the maker bank.

19 If the maker bank is not a clearing or correspondent bank, the check data
20 including image will be forwarded in step 621 using the FRB item clearing processes to
21 route the item image to the FRB affiliated with the maker bank. The maker bank FRB
22 determines if the maker bank will accept check data including an image of the item. If
23 the maker bank requires a paper item, the maker bank FRB prints an identical image of
24 the original item with information showing that it is a duplicate and that the bank of first

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 deposit is central site guarantees the item. This duplicated item is then sent in step 621 to
2 the maker bank for the collections of funds.

3 As an alternative, the check image or a printed reproduction of the check can be
4 sent in step 621 to the maker bank from either the bank of first deposit is central site or
5 the maker bank FRB using any other acceptable clearing method or process.

6 Check items that need to be returned, are done so in steps 624 and 625 to the bank
7 of first deposit to be routed back through the same route that was used to clear the item. If
8 a paper item has been created, that item will be returned along with information showing
9 the reason for return. Otherwise, the image will be used for return item purposes until the
10 return item image is returned to the bank of first deposit's central site. At that point, if
11 the remote site processor 201 is able to receive an item image, the image along with the
12 return reason will be passed to the remote site processor 201. If the remote site processor
13 is not capable of receiving check data including an item image, a paper duplicate showing
14 the return reason will be printed either by the central site or by the item capture system
15 under the direction of the central site and sent to the remote site operator 301. The
16 unique item number assigned at capture time by either the central site or the remote site
17 can a be included in all return images and/or returned paper items to enable complete and
18 accurate tracking of all return items

19 Re-deposit may be performed in steps 626, 627, 628 of items facilitated by the
20 remote site prompting the remote site operator with instructions on how to scan and
21 transmit the returned paper item or re-deposit the endorsed image previously captured
22 and stored. The unique item number assigned at capture time by either the central site or
23 the remote site facilitates both options.

24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 Figure 7 is a detailed flowchart depicting the specific steps for carrying out the
2 invention in accordance with a preferred embodiment.

3 In a step 700, the software is loaded or otherwise made available to the remote
4 site processor for execution. Those skilled in the art appreciate the various processes and
5 steps for performing loading of software into a processor such as the remote site
6 processor. It is also contemplated within the scope of the present invention that the
7 software for execution on any of the processors may take the form of embedded
8 executable instructions.

9 Query step 900 determines if deposit processing criteria, (e.g., deposit limit and
10 endorsement information) are present at the remote site processor thereby enabling the
11 initial check deposit processing decisions to be performed locally at the remote site
12 processor or, alternatively, when the deposit processing criteria is not local on the remote
13 site processor, processing passes through path 906 to step 701.

14 When query step 900 determines that deposit processing criteria is present at the
15 remote site processor, a query step 910 determines if the information required to
16 determine deposit limits and endorse the item is current on the remote site processor. If
17 this information is present and current on the remote site processor, processing passes
18 through path 911 to step 930 where the remote site operator enters deposit information, as
19 well as the endorsement voiding and item numbering information in process step 931
20 prior to reading the first monetary item in process step 932 and then proceeding to query
21 step 933. If this information is not present on the remote site processor or if it is not
22 current, then query step 920 determines if this information can be updated by the
23 operator. If the operator cannot update this information, then process step 926 allows for
24 updating the deposit information from the central site processor and then proceeds to

1 process step 930 where the operator begins the remote capture function by entering
2 deposit information. If the operator can update this information, then process step 921
3 allows for the operator to update the deposit limit and endorsement information and then
4 proceed to process query step 922.

5 Query step 922 determines if the remote site processor can make deposit limit
6 and/or endorsement decisions. If the decision can be made by the remote site processor,
7 then process step 930 allows for the remote operator to enter deposit information, as well
8 as the endorsement voiding and item numbering information in process step 931 prior to
9 reading the first monetary item in process step 932 and then proceeding to query step
10 933.

11 Query step 933 determines if the current item exceeds the item dollar limit or
12 makes the deposit exceed the deposit dollar limit. If the limits are exceed then the
13 process of entering items for the given deposit in process end 934, and the remote site
14 operator has the option of beginning another deposit or ending the deposit process with
15 the central site processor. If the limits are not exceeded, then process step 935 accounts
16 for the scanned item 932 being edited for accuracy and completeness at the remote
17 location prior to proceeding to query step 936 where it is determined if the data from the
18 scanned item is correct.

19 In query step 936, if the data is correct, then query step 937 determines if there are
20 more items to scan. If there are more items to scan, then process step 940 passes back to
21 process step 930 to allow the remote operator to begin the item capture process over
22 again. If query step 937 determines that there are no more items or deposits to process,
23 then process step 941 prepares the item image data or check data for transmission prior to
24 encrypting the data in process step 942 and digitally signing the data in process step 943.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1080 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 Process step 944 transmits the data image to the central site processor for editing in
2 process step 747.

3 In query step 936, if the data is not correct, then query step 938 determines if the
4 operator can correct the data using a data terminal connected to the remote site processor.
5 If the operator can correct the data, it is done in process step 946 prior to passing through
6 process step 947 and going back to query step 936 to test data image for correctness. In
7 query step 938, if the scanned item image is not correct, process step 948 passes through
8 to process 932 where the item is rescanned.

9 Stepping back to query step 922, if endorsement and deposit limit information
10 cannot be made by the remote site processor, then the remote site operator enters deposit
11 information in process step 701 before scanning the physical monetary item in process
12 step 702 after which the item image is edited in process step 703.

13 In query step 704, if the image data is not correct, the check is returned to process
14 step 702 where it is rescanned and re-edited in step 703. If query step 704 determines the
15 image data is correct, then the data is passed successfully through process step 710 where
16 the image is prepared for transmission to process step 711 where the date is encrypted
17 and step 712 where the digital signature is added in preparation for transmitting the data
18 to the central site in process step 713.

19 Process step 714 receives the transmitted image data and passes it to query step
20 715 where it is edited for accuracy and completeness. If the data is not accurate or
21 complete, it is passed to process step 720 where the data is corrected by requesting
22 updated information from the remote site processor. If the remote site operator cannot
23 supply correct date via the terminal attached to the remote site processor in query step
24 721, then the check passes through process step 725 to process step 702 where it is

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 scanned again in preparation for editing and transmitting the corrected image to the
2 central site processor. If the remote site operator is able and authorized to correct the
3 data in query step 721, the data is entered in process step 722 and passed through path
4 723 to process step 711 where the data is encrypted in preparation for transmitting to the
5 central site processor.

6 If in query step 715 the check image data is complete and accurate, the data is
7 passed to process step 730 where the image is stored in data sets used by the bank for
8 document archival and research as well as in a database that is Internet enabled and
9 available for access and research purposes by the depositing customer and bank of first
10 deposit. After the image is stored, a confirmation of good data receipt is created in
11 process step 731. This confirmation contains necessary endorsement, item numbering
12 and voiding information, which is added to the confirmation record in process steps 732
13 and 733 prior to the confirmation being sent to the remote site processor. The
14 confirmation record is then data encrypted in process step 734 and a digital signature is
15 added in process step 735 prior to the record being transmitted to the remote processor in
16 process step 736. Upon receipt by the remote processor in process step 737, the
17 endorsement, item numbering and voiding information is printed on the physical check in
18 process step 738 prior to it being re-scanned in process step 739.

19 After a new check image is created showing the necessary endorsement and
20 voiding information in process step 740, the new check image is edited to ensure the
21 scanned check data is correct. If in query step 742, it is determined that the image data is
22 not complete or accurate, the image is passed through process step 750 to process step
23 739 where the physical check is scanned again. If the check is passed through the reader
24 again at this point, the endorsement information has already been printed and will not be

1 printed again. If in query step 742 it is determined that the check image data is good, the
2 data in prepared for transmission in process step 743 prior to the data being encrypted in
3 process step 743 and digitally signed in process step 745 prior to being transmitted to the
4 central site in process step 746.

5 As the central site receives the transmitted image data in process step 747, the
6 image is edited by the central site software in process step 748 to ensure completeness
7 and accuracy of data. Query step 756 determines quality of data and if the data is not
8 complete or accurate, it is sent to query step 791 where it is determined if the deposit
9 limit and or endorsement information is available on the remote site processor. If this
10 information is available on the remote site processor then the central site processor
11 communicates with the remote site processor through path 794 to determine if the remote
12 site operator can supply the correct image data in query step 938. The process involved
13 in query step 938 was discussed above. If query step 791 determines that the deposit
14 limit and endorsement information is not on the remote processor then query step 795
15 determines if the remote operator can supply the correct image information. If the
16 operator can supply the correct image information, it is entered in process step 796 and
17 the check image is prepared for transmission in process step 797 and passed to process
18 step 744 (previously discussed) for digital signature and transmission. If in query step
19 795 the operator cannot correct/update the image information, the check is processed
20 through path 798 to process step 739 (previously discussed) where it is scanned again in
21 preparation for transmitting to central site processor.

22 Stepping back to query step 756, if the data image is complete and accurate the
23 endorsed image of the check is stored in process step 760 in datasets used by the bank for
24 document archival and research as well as in a database in process step 762 that is

1 Internet enabled and available for the depositing customer and bank of first deposit to be
2 able to access for research purposes.

3 The central processor site then sends confirmation of good receipt of data in
4 process step 762 to the remote processor in process step 763. At this point query step 764
5 at the remote processor determines if the deposit currently being worked on is complete.
6 If the deposit is not complete, then process step 780 returns control to the previously
7 discussed process step 702 where the next item is scanned. If the deposit is complete
8 query step 764 asks the operator in query step 765 if there is another deposit. If there is
9 another deposit to be processed, process step 766 passes through to previously discussed
10 process step 701 where the new deposit process is initiated. If there is not another
11 deposit as determined in query step 765, the remote entry process is completed and the
12 captured deposit and image information is entered into application processing for the
13 bank of first deposit's central site item capture system in process step 771, the deposit
14 systems in process step 772 and the cash management systems in process step 773.

15 In the course of processing a deposit, it is integral to the decision making to
16 understand which banks the deposited items are drawn (i.e. who is the maker bank).
17 Query step 774 determines if the monetary items in the deposit are "on us" items (i.e.
18 items drawn on the bank of first deposit). If the items are "on us," the system determines,
19 in query step 850, if the check maker requires a paper check. If they do, then a
20 duplicate of the original check is printed in process step 851 and the paper item is sent to
21 the maker of the check. In addition, the image of the item is sent to process step 860
22 (discussed below) for processing on internal computer accounting systems. In query step
23 850, if the maker of the check does not require a paper duplicate of the original item,
24 process step 860 passes the checks image through the internal accounting systems to

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
 A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
 ATTORNEYS AT LAW
 1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
 60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 query step 861 where it is determined if the item is payable (*i.e.*, does the check maker
 2 have sufficient funds in their account to cover the check, is the maker account still open,
 3 etc.).

4 If query step 861 determines the item is payable, the check data is posted to the
 5 maker's account and the process ends for that check item in step 863. If query step 861
 6 determines the item is not payable, then process step 870 returns either the printed
 7 duplicate of the check or the check image to the original depositor at the remote location.
 8 In query step 871, a remote site operator determines if they want to re-deposit the item or
 9 return it. If they decide to return the item, this is done in process step 880 and path 881
 10 sends control to previously discussed process end step 863. If query step 871 determines
 11 that the item should be re-deposited for collection, query step 872 determines if this is to
 12 be done using the duplicate paper item or the original check image.

13 If the return from query step 872 is to be done using the duplicate paper item, then
 14 this is done in path 873 where control is sent back to previously discussed process step
 15 764 where the item is deposited using the scanner/reader/printer. If the check return from
 16 query step 872 is to be done using the original captured check image for the item, process
 17 step 875 allows for the remote operator to initiate this process in a step 875 by entering
 18 the unique number assigned to the original check at capture time. This information is
 19 sent to the central site processor via process step 876 and control is then passed through
 20 path 877 to process step 764 where the item is deposited using the check original check
 21 image.

22 Stepping back to query step 774 where it is determined if the item is an on us
 23 item, if query step 774 determines that the item is not an "on us" item then query step
 24 800 determines if the maker bank is a clearing bank or a correspondent bank. If the

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 maker bank is a clearing bank or a correspondent bank, then query step 801 determines if
2 the maker bank requires a paper copy of the original check item. If they require a paper
3 duplicate, then a paper duplicate of the original item is printed in process step 802 and
4 sent to the maker bank in path 803 which passes control to process step 805 discussed
5 below. If query step 801 determines that the maker bank does not require a printed
6 duplicate check, the image of the original item drawn on the maker bank is sent to the
7 maker bank in process step 805 and the maker bank sends the item through path 806 to
8 previously discussed process step 861 to determine if the item is payable at the maker
9 bank.

10 Stepping back to query step 800, if the payee bank is not a clearing bank or
11 correspondent bank, process step 810 sends the check image to the Federal Reserve Bank
12 (FRB) serving as the clearing entity for the bank of first deposit. That branch of the
13 Federal Reserve Bank forwards the check image to the Federal Reserve Bank serving as
14 the clearing agent for the maker bank. That Federal Reserve Bank determines in query
15 step 811 if the maker bank requires a paper duplicate of the original paper check. If the
16 maker bank requires a paper item, the FRB prints the paper item in process step 812,
17 incorporates the duplicate check in their processing systems as depicted in process step
18 813 where the item is sent in path 814 to process step 815 where the maker bank receives
19 the paper item. If in query step 811 the maker bank does not require a paper check, the
20 FRB sends the image to the maker bank that receives the image in process step 815 and
21 passes, via path 816, either the check image or printed duplicate of the original check to
22 previously discussed query step 861 to determine if the item is payable by the maker.

23 The present invention may be embodied in other forms without departing from its
24 spirit or essential characteristics. As properly understood, the preceding description of

1 specific embodiments is illustrative only and in no way restrictive. The scope of the
2 invention is, therefore, indicated solely by the appended claims as follows.

3 What is claimed and desired to be secured by United States Letters Patent is:
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 1. A method for processing a check deposited at a remote location, said remote
2 locations including financial institutions and other locations capable of interfacing with
3 said financial institutions, said method comprising the steps of:

4 a) converting said check into electronic check data;

5 b) electronically exchanging said check data with said financial
6 institution; and

7 c) said financial institution crediting an account according to said check
8 data.

9
10 2. The method as recited in claim 1, wherein converting step comprises the steps
11 of:

12 a) scanning said check to create image data, said image data representing
13 an electronic image of said check; and

14 b) reading said image data to create informational data from said image
15 data to aid in electronic processing of said deposited check.

16
17 3. The method as recited in claim 2, wherein said converting step further
18 comprises the step of:

19 a) reading at least a portion of said check to determine additional
20 informational data stored in a Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) line.
21
22
23
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 4. The method as recited in claim 1, wherein said electronically exchanging said
2 check data step comprises the step of:

3 a) sending said check data from said non-financial institution location to
4 said financial institution over an electronic channel;

5 b) said financial institution verifying said check data with account
6 records accessible by said financial institution;

7 c) when said check data conforms to said account records, said financial
8 institution confirming said check data to said remote location; and

9 d) said non-financial institution location processing said check data into
10 processed check data in response to said confirming step.

11
12 5. The method as recited in claim 4, wherein said financial institution confirming
13 said check data step comprises the steps of:

14 a) said financial institution acknowledging to said remote location receipt
15 and accuracy of said check data; and

16 b) said financial institution sending endorsement and voiding information
17 to said remote location.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 6. The method as recited in claim 5, wherein said remote location processing
2 said check data into processed check data step comprises the steps of:

3 a) endorsing said check using said endorsement information; and

4 b) voiding said check using said voiding information, said endorsing and
5 voiding steps creating a processed check.

6
7 7. The method as recited in claim 6, wherein said endorsing and voiding steps
8 are further comprised of the step of:

9 a) printing on said endorsement and voiding information on said check.

10
11 8. The method as recited in claim 4, further comprising the step of:

12 a) following said processing said check data into processed check data
13 step, said remote location secondly converting said processed check data into
14 electronic processed check data.

15
16 9. The method as recited in claim 8, wherein said secondly converting step
17 comprises the steps of:

18 a) scanning said processed check to create image data, said image data
19 representing an electronic image of said processed check; and

20 b) reading said image data to create informational data from said image
21 data to aid in electronic processing of said depositing of said check.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 10. The method as recited in claim 9, further comprising the steps of:
2 a) secondly electronically exchanging said processed check data with
3 said financial institution.

4
5 11. The method as recited in claim 10, wherein said secondly electronically
6 exchanging said check data step comprises the step of:

7 a) sending said processed check data from said remote location to said
8 financial institution over an electronic channel;

9 b) said financial institution verifying said processed check data with
10 account records accessible by said financial institution; and

11 c) when said processed check data conforms to said account records, said
12 financial institution secondly confirming said processed check data to said remote
13 location.

14
15 12. The method as recite in claim 4, wherein said crediting said account according
16 to said check data step further comprises the step of:

17 a) when said financial institution is not the maker bank of said check,
18 sending said processed check data to said maker bank for clearing said check.

1 13. The method as recited in claim 12, wherein said sending said processed check
2 data to said maker bank for clearing said check step comprises the steps of:

3 a) when said maker bank is electronic exchange-capable, electronically
4 exchanging said processed check data with said maker bank; and

5 b) when said maker bank is not electronic exchange-capable, printing a
6 facsimile of said check from said processed check data; and forwarding said
7 facsimile of said check to said maker bank.

8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 14. A computer-readable medium having computer-executable instructions for
2 performing a method for processing a check deposited at a location remote from a
3 financial institution, said computer-executable instructions for performing the steps of:

4 a) converting said check into electronic check data;

5 b) electronically exchanging said check data with said financial
6 institution; and

7 c) said financial institution crediting an account according to said check
8 data.

9
10 15. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
11 recited in claim 14, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
12 step of converting comprises computer-executable instructions for performing the steps
13 of:

14 a) scanning said check to create image data, said image data representing
15 an electronic image of said check; and

16 b) reading said image data to create informational data from said image
17 data to aid in electronic processing of said depositing of said check.

18
19 16. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
20 recited in claim 15, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
21 step of converting further comprises computer-executable instructions for performing the
22 step of:

23 a) reading at least a portion of said check to determine additional
24 informational data stored in a Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) line.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 17. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
2 recited in claim 14, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing said
3 electronically exchanging said check data step comprises computer-executable
4 instructions for performing the step of:

5 a) sending said check data from said non-financial institution location to
6 said financial institution over an electronic channel;

7 b) said financial institution verifying said check data with account
8 records accessible by said financial institution;

9 c) when said check data conforms to said account records, said financial
10 institution confirming said check data to said non-financial institution location;
11 and

12 d) said non-financial institution location processing said check data into
13 processed check data in response to said confirming step.

14
15 18. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
16 recited in claim 17, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
17 step of said financial institution confirming said check data step comprises computer-
18 executable instructions for performing the steps of:

19 a) said financial institution acknowledging to said non-financial
20 institution location receipt and accuracy of said check data; and

21 b) said financial institution sending endorsement and voiding
22 information to said non-financial institution location.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 19. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
2 recited in claim 18, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
3 step of said non-financial institution location processing said check data into processed
4 check data step comprises computer-executable instructions for performing the steps of:

5 a) endorsing said check using said endorsement information; and

6 b) voiding said check using said voiding information, said endorsing and
7 voiding steps creating a processed check.
8

9 20. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
10 recited in claim 18, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
11 steps of endorsing and voiding are further comprised of computer-executable instructions
12 for performing the step of:

13 a) printing on said endorsement and voiding information on said check.
14

15 21. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
16 recited in claim 17, wherein said computer-readable medium further comprise computer-
17 executable instructions for performing the step of:

18 a) following said processing said check data into processed check data
19 step, said non-financial institution location secondly converting said processed
20 check data into electronic processed check data.
21
22
23
24

1 22. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
2 recited in claim 21, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
3 step of secondly converting comprises computer-executable instructions for performing
4 the steps of:

5 a) scanning said processed check to create image data, said image data
6 representing an electronic image of said processed check; and

7 b) reading said image data to create informational data from said image
8 data to aid in electronic processing of said depositing of said check.

9
10 23. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
11 recited in claim 22, wherein said computer-readable medium further comprise computer-
12 executable instructions for performing the steps of:

13 a) secondly electronically exchanging said processed check data with
14 said financial institution.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 24. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
2 recited in claim 23, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
3 step of secondly electronically exchanging said check data comprises computer-
4 executable instructions for performing the steps of:

5 a) sending said processed check data from said non-financial institution
6 location to said financial institution over an electronic channel;

7 b) said financial institution verifying said processed check data with
8 account records accessible by said financial institution; and

9 c) when said processed check data conforms to said account records, said
10 financial institution secondly confirming said processed check data to said non-
11 financial institution location.

12
13 25. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
14 recited in claim 17, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
15 step of crediting said account according to said check data step further comprises
16 computer-executable instructions for performing the step of:

17 a) when said financial institution is not the maker bank of said check,
18 sending said processed check data to said maker bank for clearing said check.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 26. The computer-readable medium having computer-executable instructions, as
2 recited in claim 25, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
3 step of sending said processed check data to said maker bank for clearing said check
4 comprises computer-executable instructions for performing the steps of:

5 a) when said maker bank is electronic exchange-capable, electronically
6 exchanging said processed check data with said maker bank; and when said maker
7 bank is not electronic exchange-capable, printing a facsimile of said check from
8 said processed check data; and forwarding said facsimile of said check to said
9 maker bank.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 27. A system for processing a deposit of a check, said system comprising:

2 a) a remote site for converting said check into electronic check data;

3 b) a central site electronically accessible to said remote site, said central
4 site capable of electronically exchanging said check data with financial
5 institution; and

6 c) a maker site capable of electronically interfacing with said central site
7 to obtain said check data and to credit an account according to said check data
8 without having to physically receive the check at said financial institution.

9
10 28. The system for processing a deposit of a check, as recited in claim 27, wherein
11 said remote site further comprises:

12 a) a scanner/reader/printer to receive said check for processing; and

13 b) a remote processor electronically and operably coupled to said
14 scanner/reader/printer, said remote processor further comprising computer-
15 executable instructions for interacting with said scanner/reader/printer, said
16 computer-executable instructions in conjunction with said scanner/reader/printer
17 for performing the steps of:

18 i) scanning said check to create image data, said image data
19 representing an electronic image of said check;

20 ii) reading said image data to create informational data from
21 said image data to aid in electronic processing of said depositing of said
22 check; and

23 iii) sending said check data from said remote site to said
24 central site over an electronic channel.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 29. The system for processing a deposit of a check, as recited in claim 27, wherein
2 said central site further comprises:

3 a) central site processor further comprising computer-executable
4 instructions for performing the steps of:

5 b) verifying said check data with account records accessible by said
6 central site; and

7 c) when said check data conforms to said account records, said central
8 site confirming said check data to remote site including sending endorsement and
9 voiding information to said remote site.

10
11 30. The system for processing a deposit of a check, as recited in claim 29, wherein
12 said remote site further comprises computer-executable instructions for:

13 a) in response to said central site confirming step, processing said check
14 data into processed check data including

15 b) endorsing said check using said endorsement information;

16 c) voiding said check using said voiding information, said endorsing and
17 voiding steps creating a processed check; and

18 d) secondly converting said processed check into electronic processed
19 check data by scanning said processed check to create image data, said image data
20 representing an electronic image of said processed check and reading said image
21 data to create information al data from said image data to aid in electronic
22 processing of said depositing of said check.

1 31. The system for processing a deposit of a check as recited in claim 27, wherein
2 said account is credited according to said check data without having to receive the
3 physical check at the maker site.
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 32. A method for processing a check deposited at a financial institution, said
2 method comprising the steps of:

3 a) converting said check into electronic check data;

4 b) electronically exchanging said check data with said financial
5 institution; and

6 c) said financial institution crediting an account according to said check
7 data.

8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- 18
- 19
- 20
- 21
- 22
- 23
- 24

13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

18
19
20
21
22
23
24

1 / 15

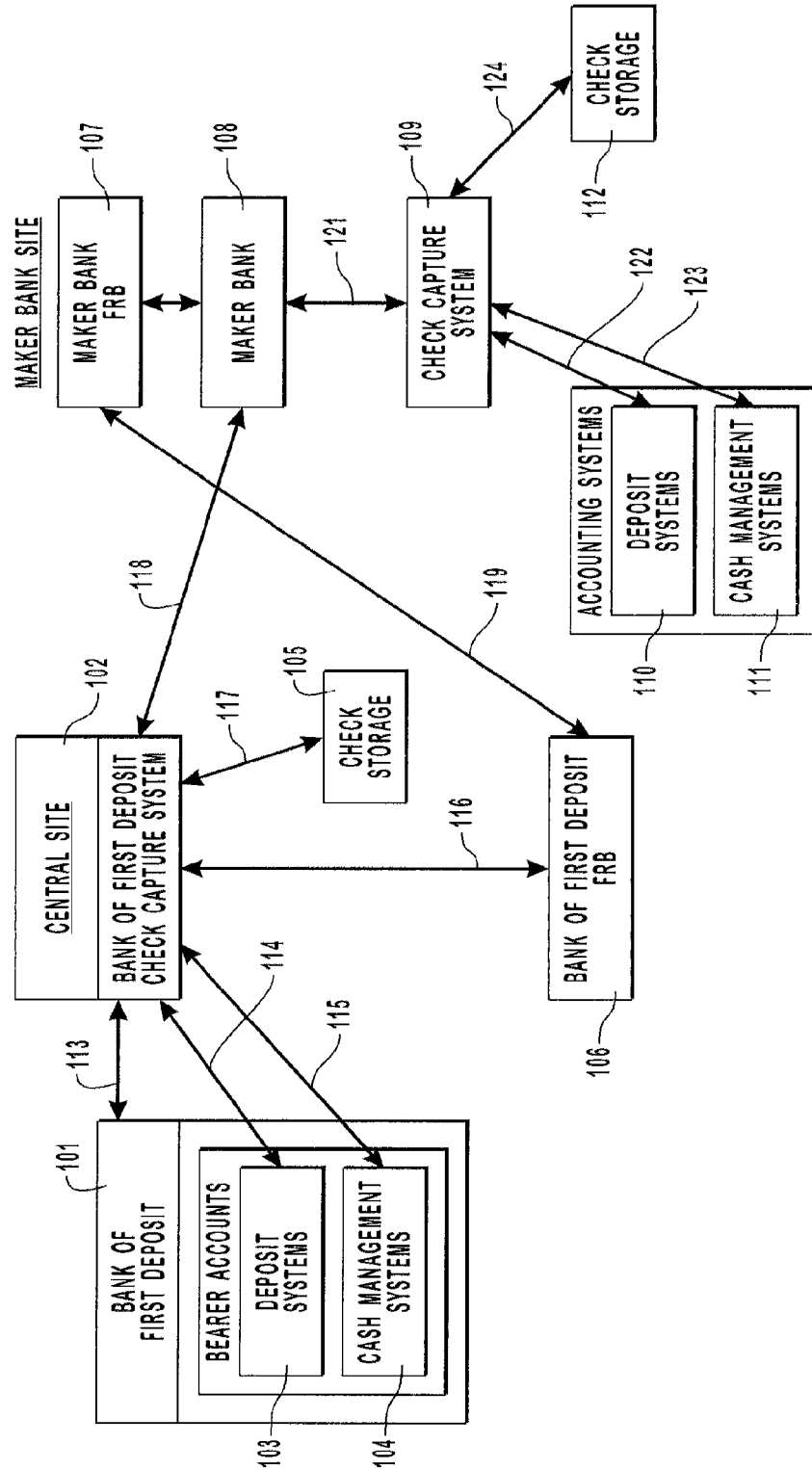


FIG. 1

2 / 15

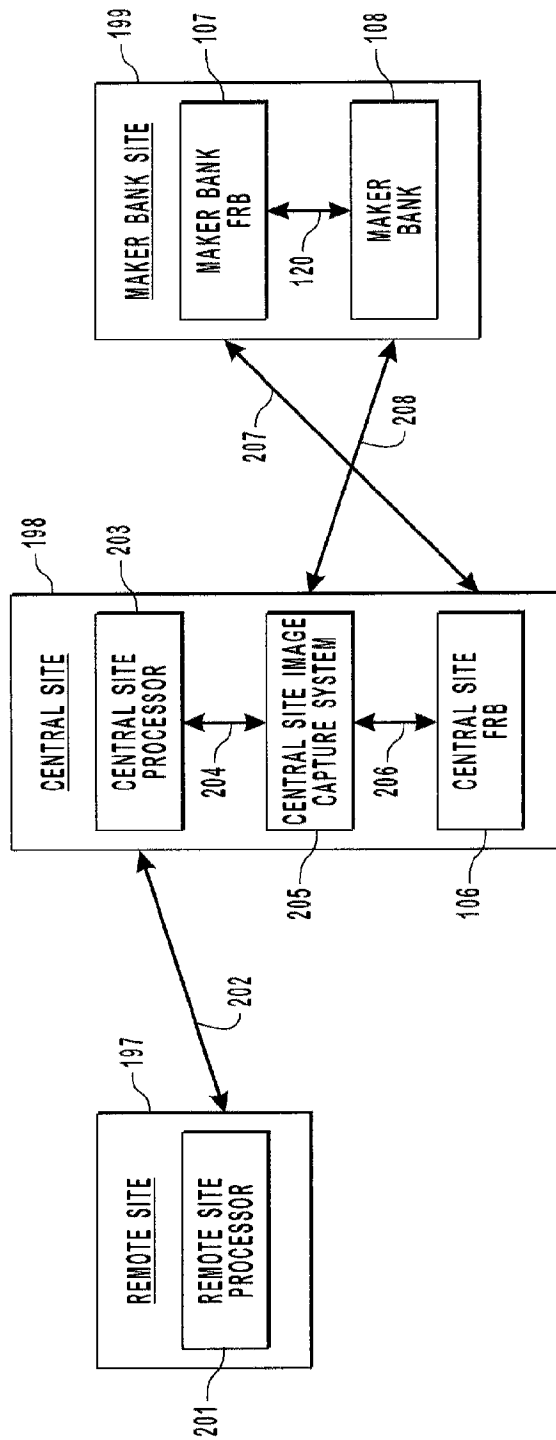


FIG. 2

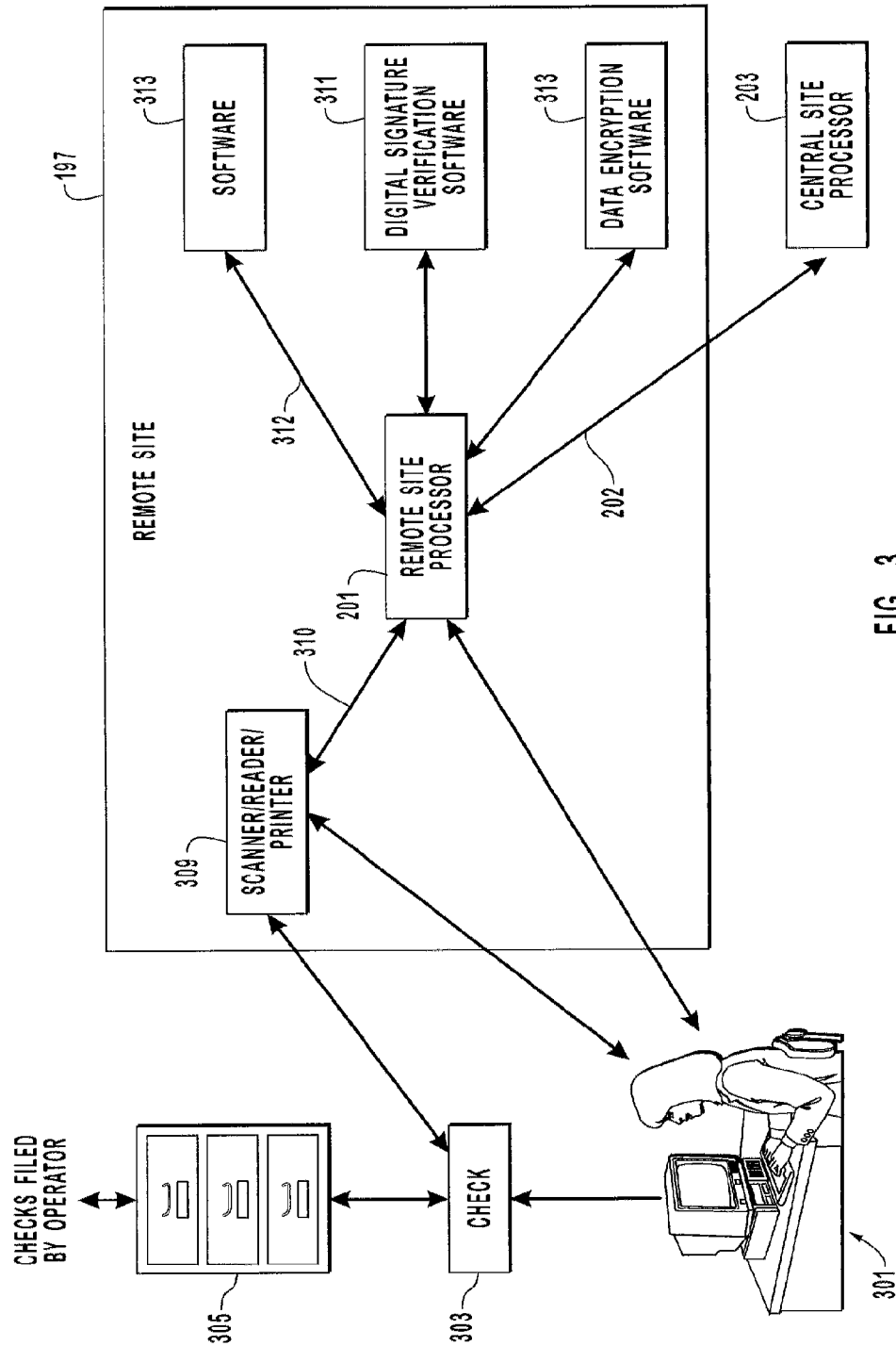


FIG. 3

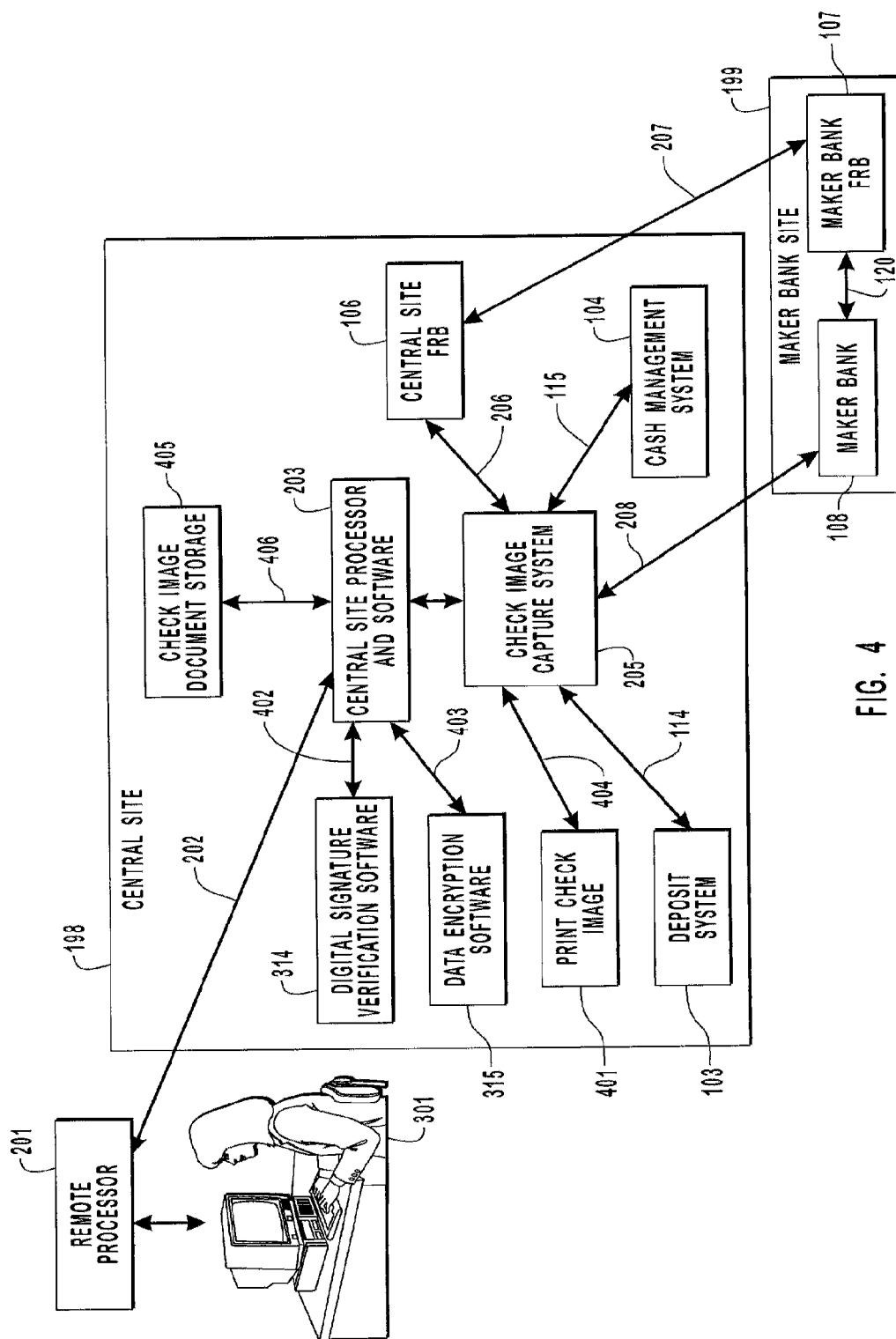


FIG. 4

5 / 15

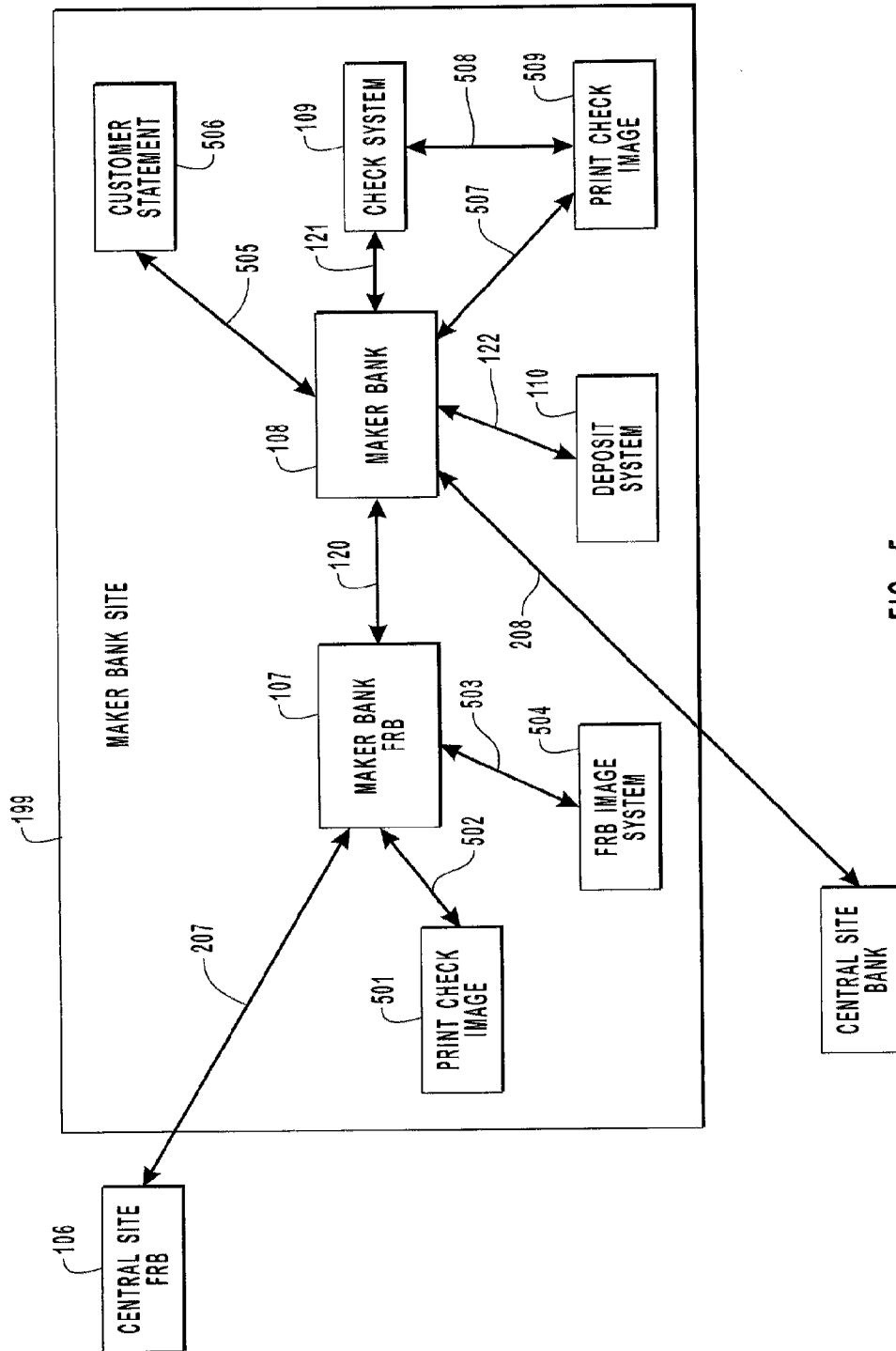


FIG. 5

6 / 15

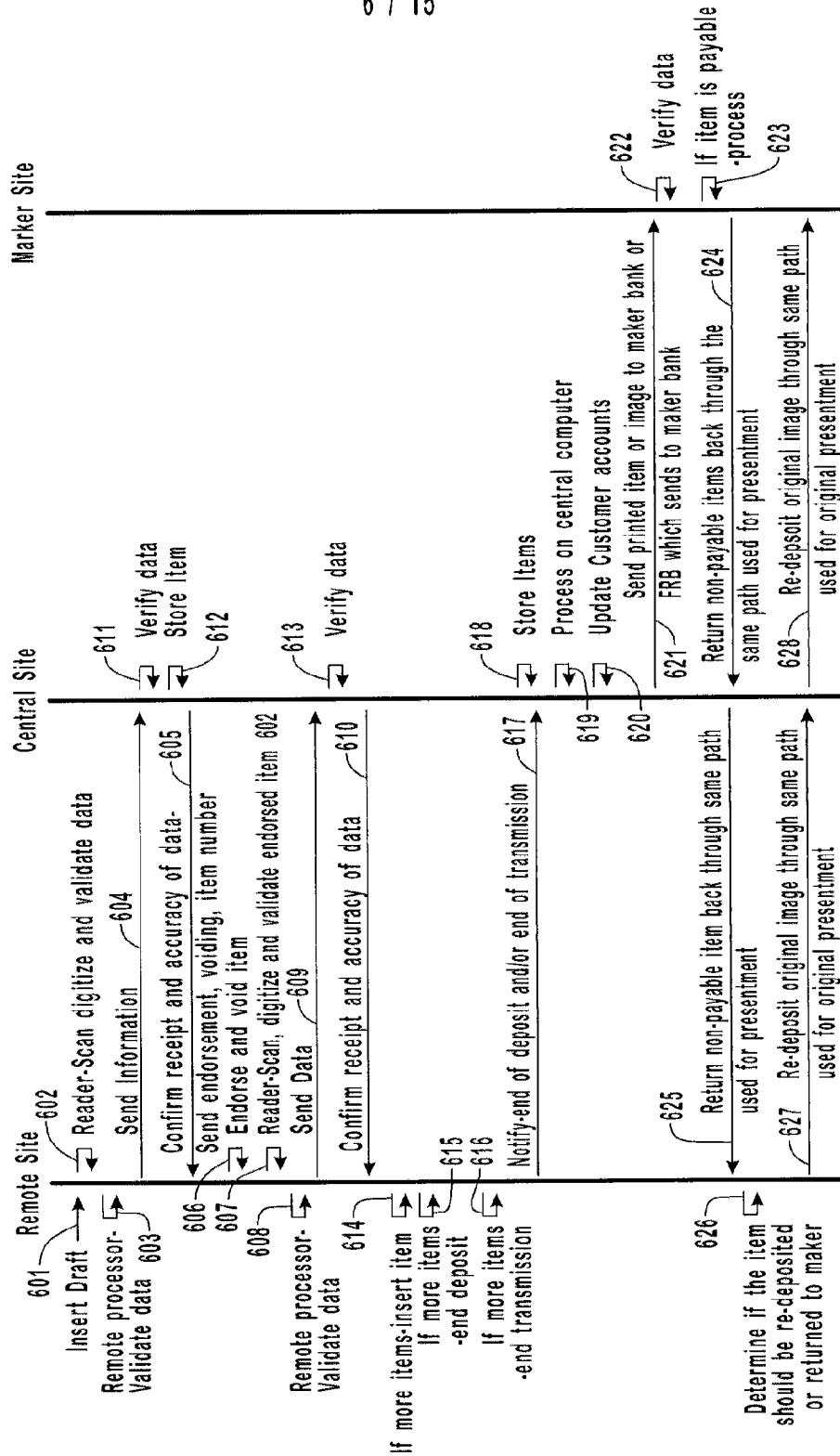


FIG. 6

7 / 15

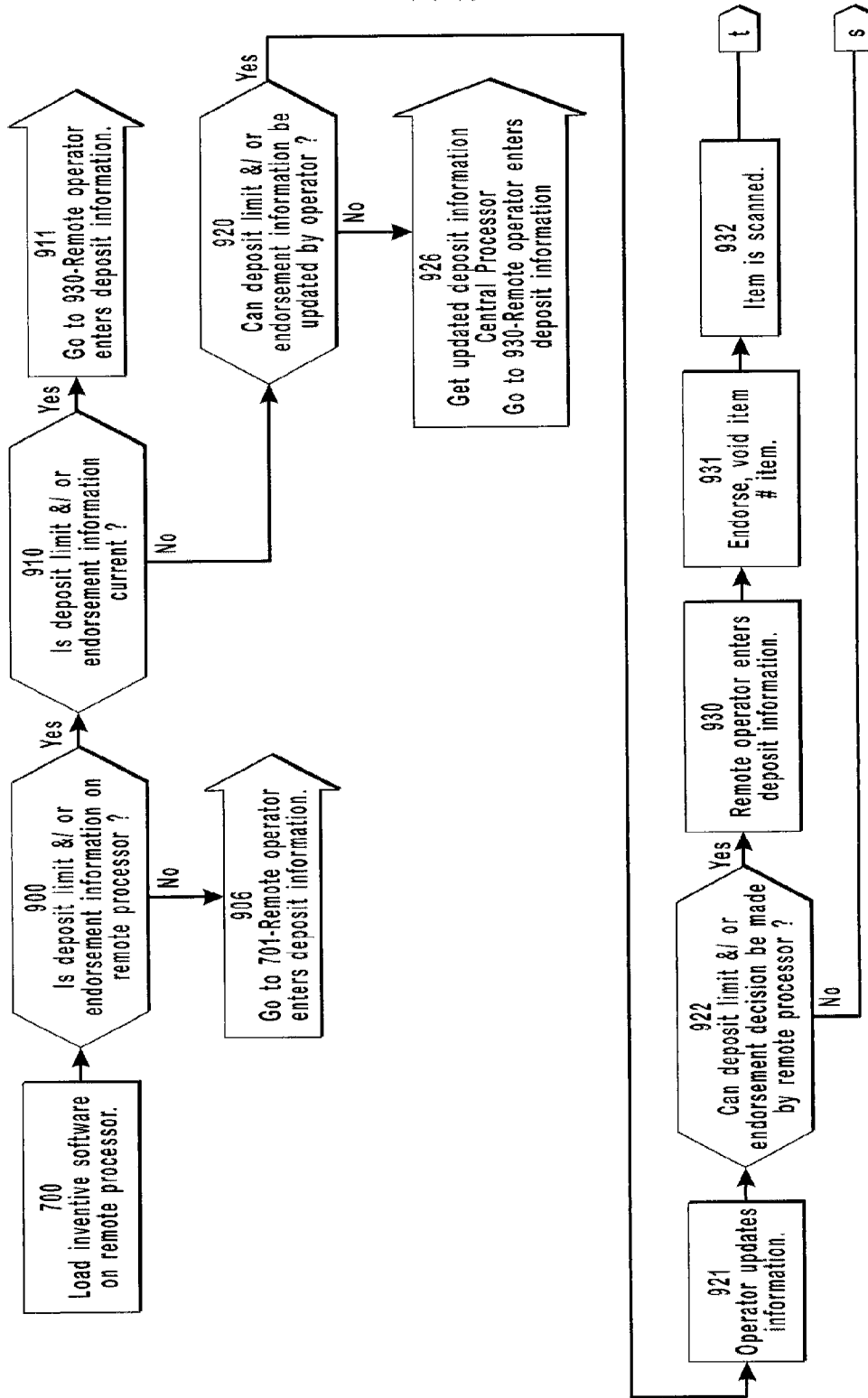


FIG. 7a

8 / 15

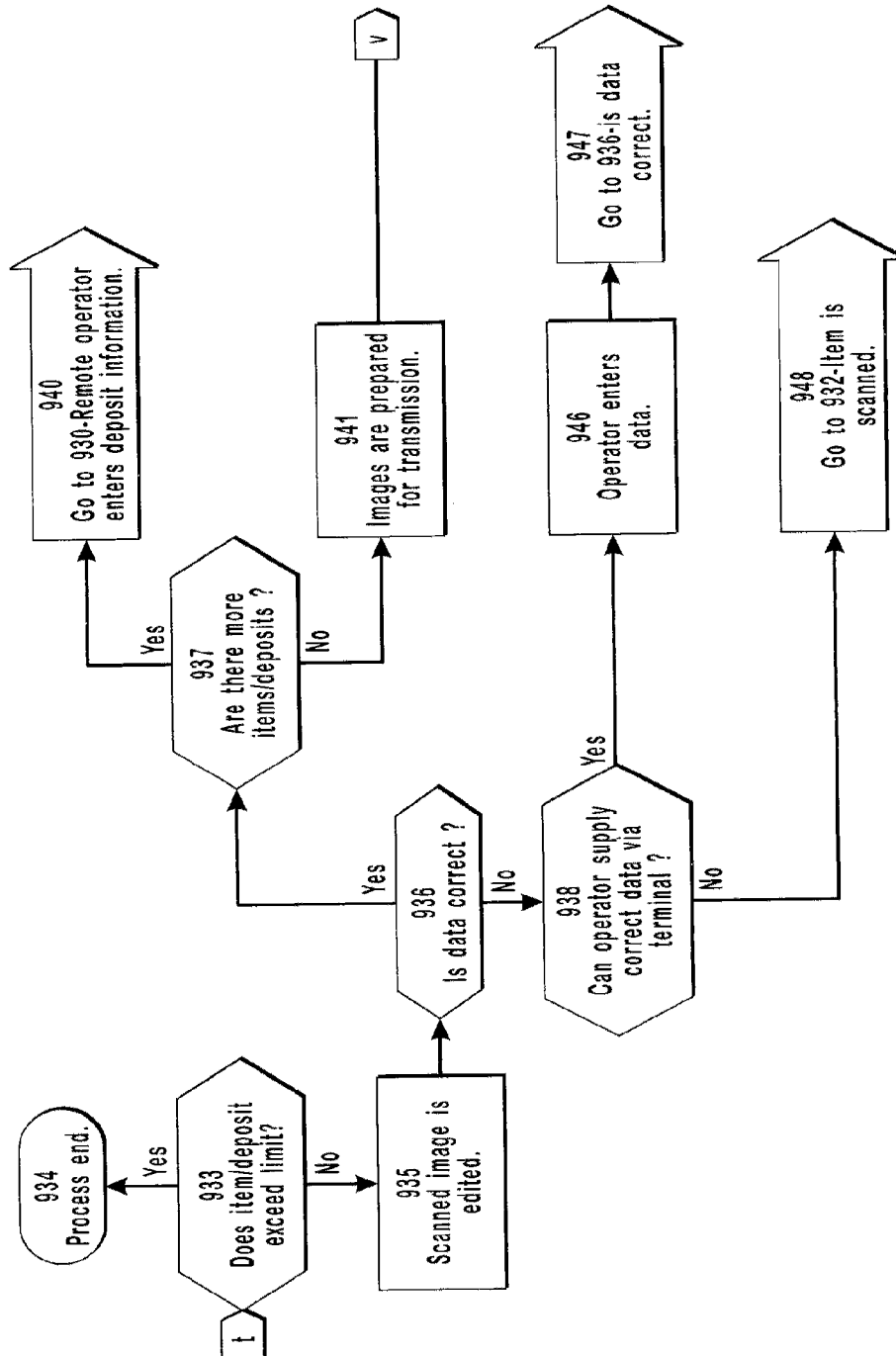


FIG. 7b

9 / 15

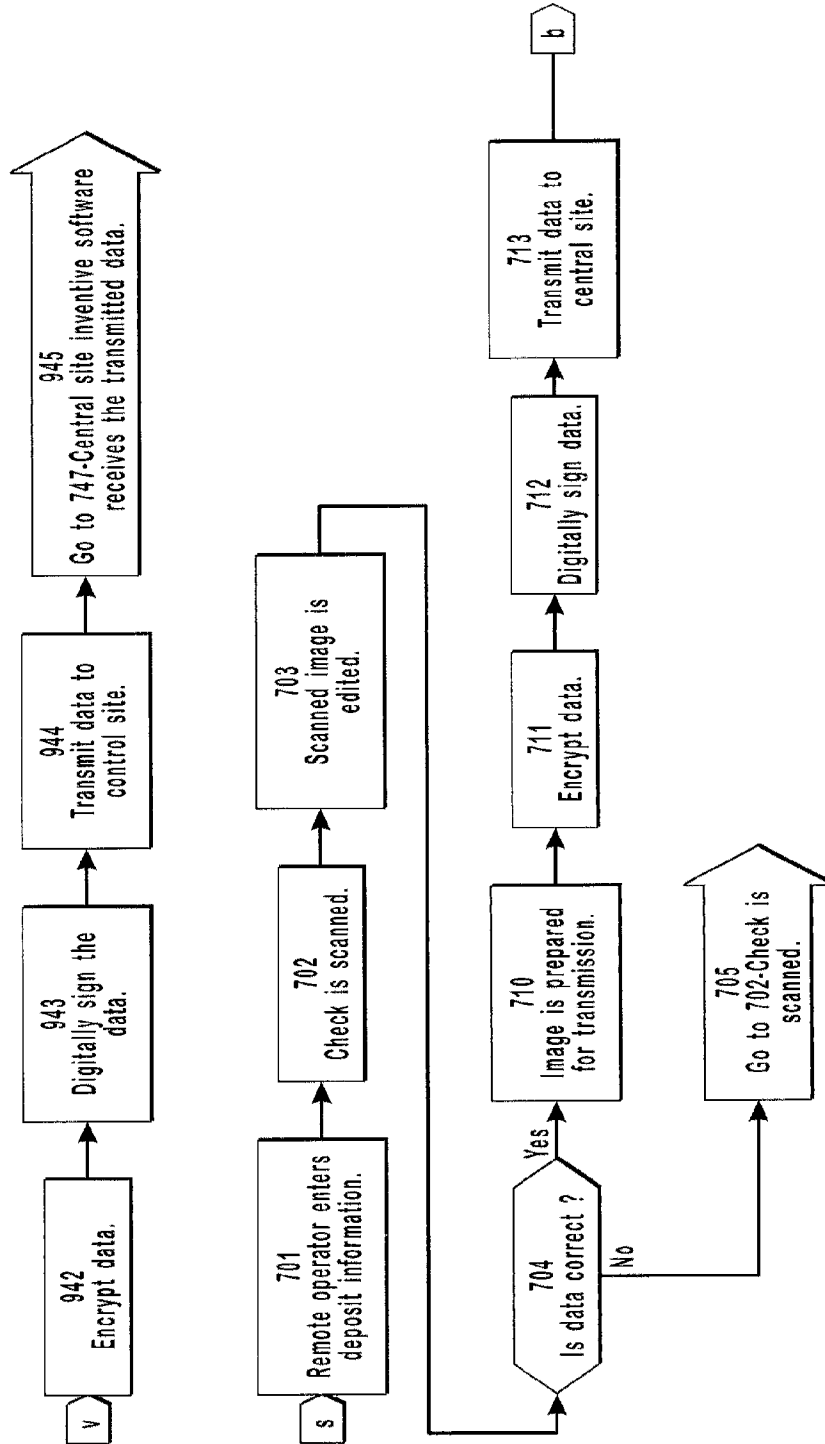


FIG. 7c

10 / 15

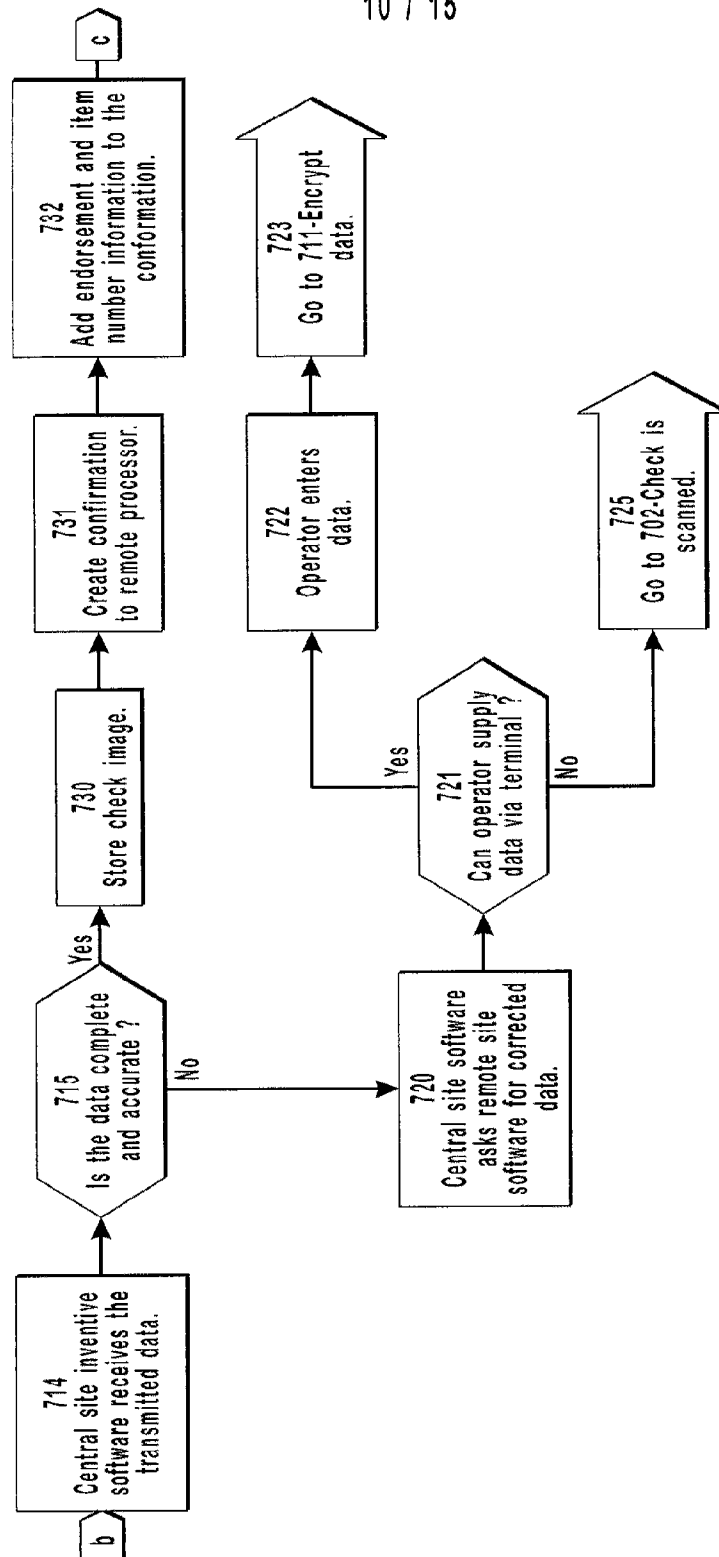


FIG. 7d

11 / 15

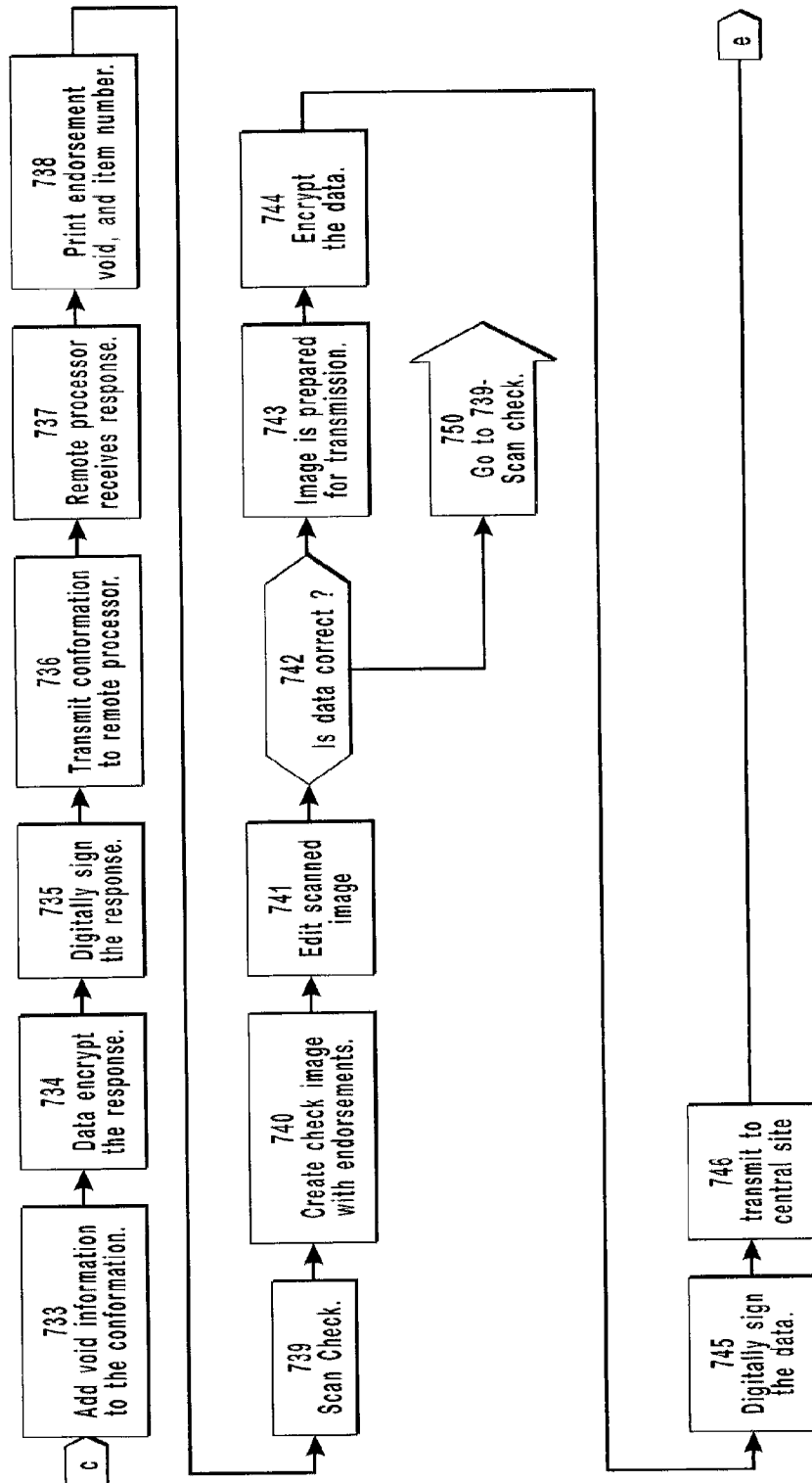


FIG. 7e

12 / 15

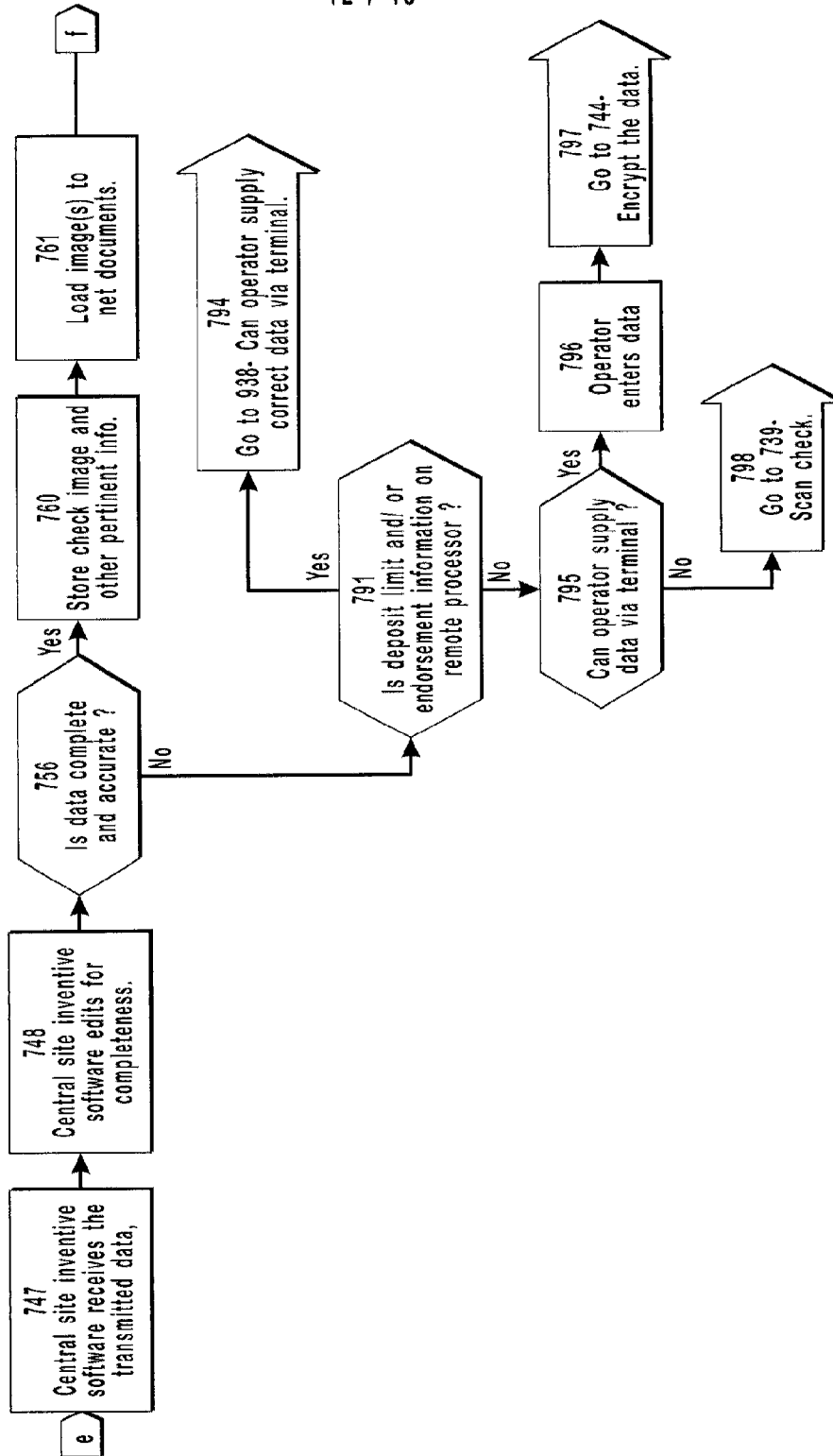


FIG. 7f

13 / 15

PPS-JHA000272

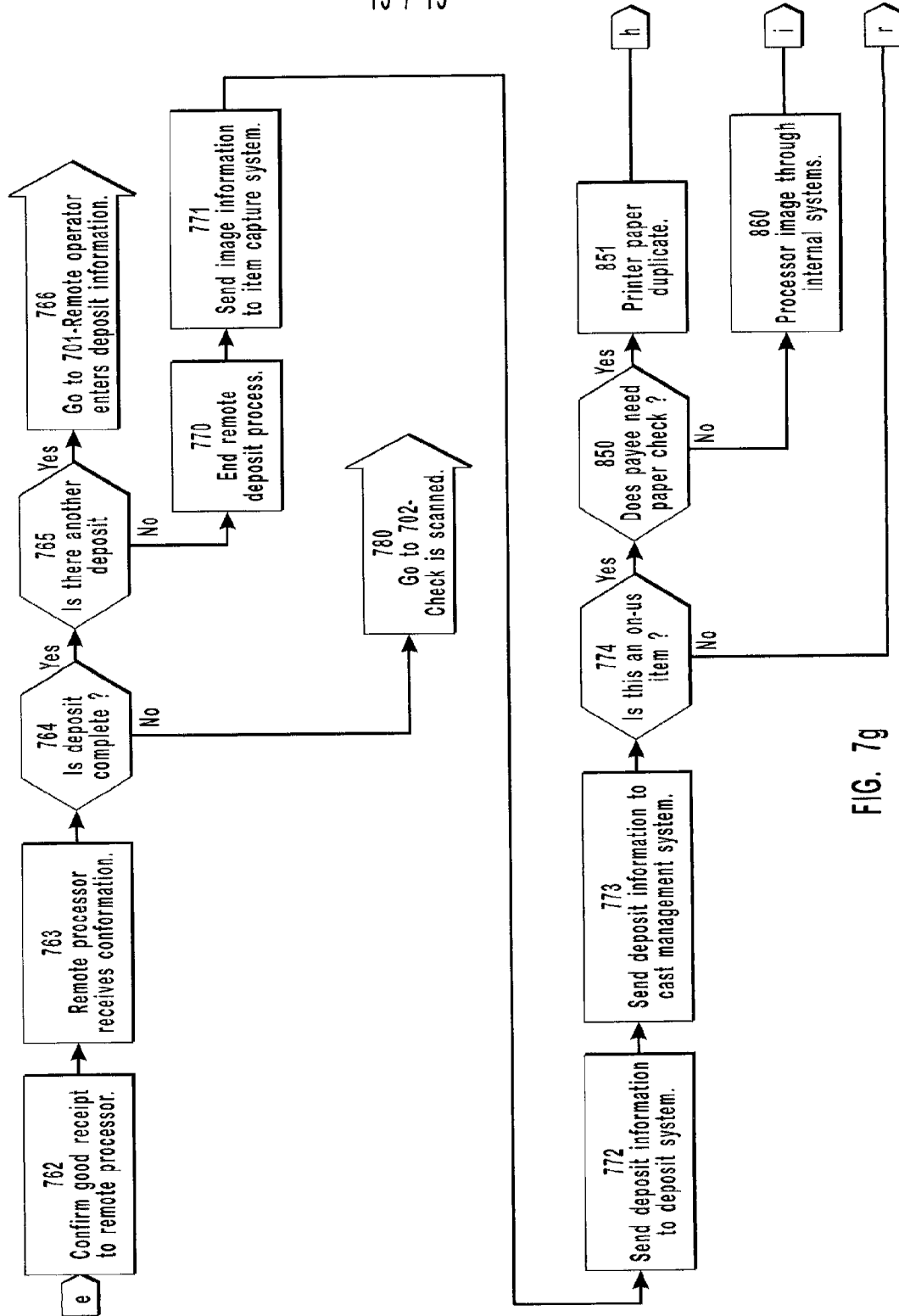


FIG. 7g

14 / 15

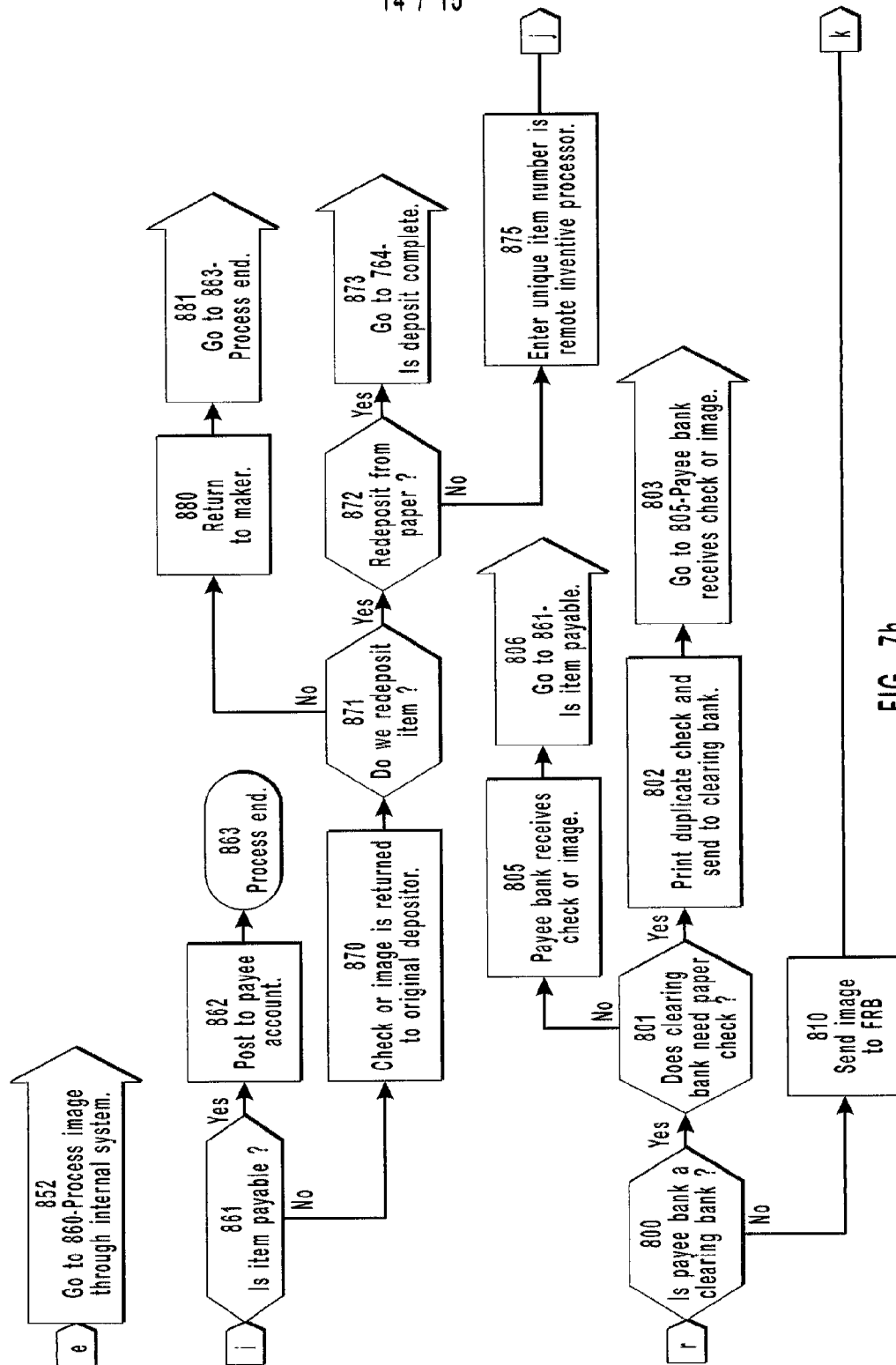


FIG. 7h

15 / 15

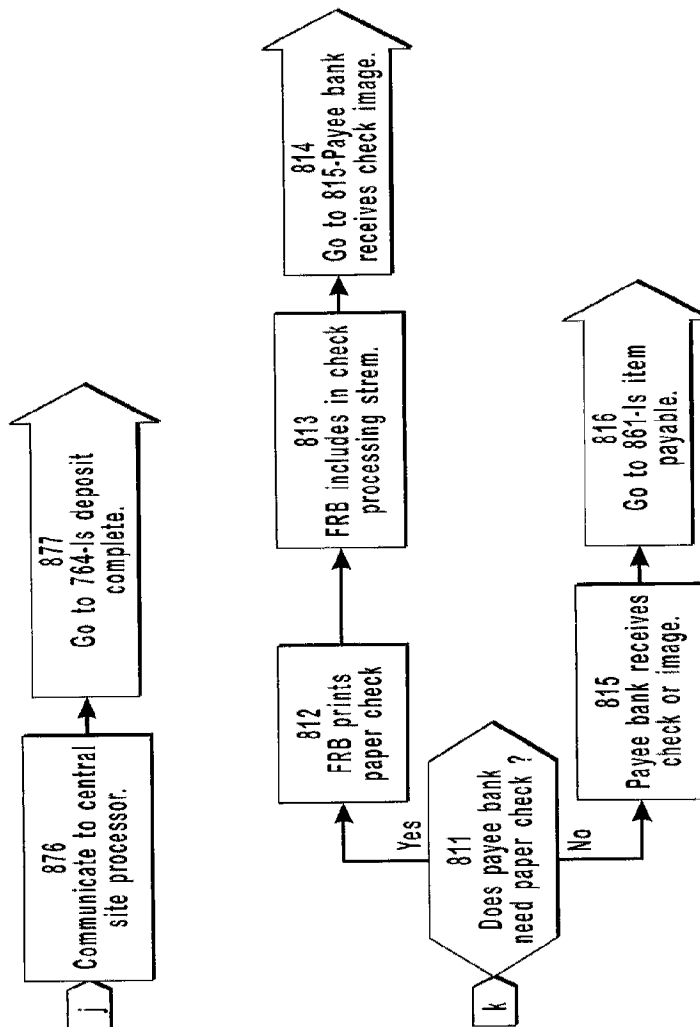


FIG. 7i

Express Mail Label No. EL550340765US

PATENT APPLICATION

Docket No: 7905.15

DECLARATION, POWER OF ATTORNEY, AND PETITION

We,

(1) Name: Danne L. Buchanan
Address: 3362 East Oak Hollow Circle
Sandy, Utah 84093

Citizenship: United States of America

(2) Name: William Ronald Titus
Address: 345 North Coventry Circle
Fruit Heights, Utah 84037

Citizenship: United States of America

declare: that our citizenship, residence address, and post office address are as set forth above; that we verily believe we are the original, first, and joint inventors of the subject matter of the invention or discovery entitled METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION for which a patent is sought and which is described and claimed in the specification attached hereto; that we have reviewed and understand the contents of the above-identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment specifically referred to herein; and that we acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to the patentability of this application in accordance with Section 1.56(a) of Title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

We declare further that all statements made herein of our own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful, false statements and the like so made are


punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful, false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

We hereby appoint as our attorneys and/or patent agents: RICK D. NYDEGGER, Registration No. 28,651; DAVID O. SEELEY, Registration No. 30,148; JONATHAN W. RICHARDS, Registration No. 29,843; JOHN C. STRINGHAM, Registration No. 40,831; BRADLEY K. DeSANDRO, Registration No. 34,521; JOHN M. GUYNN, Registration No. 36,153; CHARLES L. ROBERTS, Registration No. 32,434; GREGORY M. TAYLOR, Registration No. 34,263; DANA L. TANGREN, Registration No. 37,246; KEVIN B. LAURENCE, Registration No. 38,219; ERIC L. MASCHOFF, Registration No. 36,596; C. J. VEVERKA, Registration No. 40,858; ROBYN L. PHILLIPS, Registration No. 39,330; RICHARD C. GILMORE, Registration No. 37,335; DAVID B. DELLENBACH, Registration No. 39,166; KEVIN K. JOHANSON, Registration No. 38,506; DAVID L. GRIFFIN, Registration No. 44,136; R. BURNS ISRAELSEN, Registration No. 42,685; DAVID R. TODD, Registration No. 41,348; FRASER D. ROY, Registration No. 45,666; CARL T. REED, Registration No. 45,454; JESÚS JUANÓS i TIMONEDA, Registration No. 43,332; STEPHEN D. PRODNUK, Registration No. 43,020; R. PARRISH FREEMAN, JR., Registration No. 42,556; PETER F. MALEN, JR., Registration No. 45,576; ADRIAN J. LEE, Registration No. 42,785; KYLE H. FLINDT, Registration No. 42,539; and ERIC M. KAMERATH, Registration No. 46,081, with full power of substitution and revocation, to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith. All correspondence and telephonic communications should be directed to:

Kevin K. Johanson
WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
1000 Eagle Gate Tower
60 East South Temple
Salt Lake City, Utah 84111
Telephone: (801) 533-9800
Facsimile: (801) 328-1707

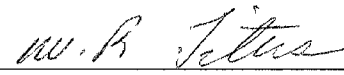
Wherefore, we pray that Letters Patent be granted to us for the invention or discovery described and claimed in the foregoing specification and claims, declaration, power of attorney, and this petition.

DATED this 28th day of April, 2000.

Inventor: 

DANNE L. BUCHANAN
3362 East Oak Hollow Circle
Sandy, Utah 84093

DATED this 28th day of April, 2000.

Inventor: 

WILLIAM RONALD TITUS
345 North Coventry Circle
Fruit Heights, Utah 84037

G:\DATA\WPDOCS2\CIA\KKJ\ZIONS\7905-15-pow.doc

	Class	Subclass
ISSUE CLASSIFICATION		

U.S. UTILITY Patent Application (DATE)

KW O.I.F.E. T10 SCANNED Q.A. AG	PATENT DATE
---	-------------

APPLICATION NO. 09/560779	CONT/PRIOR	CLASS 705	SUBCLASS 42	ART UNIT 3785	EXAMINER N...
------------------------------	------------	--------------	----------------	------------------	------------------

TITLE	APPLICANTS
1. <i>General</i>	
2. <i>Specific</i>	
3. <i>General</i>	
4. <i>Specific</i>	
5. <i>General</i>	
6. <i>Specific</i>	
7. <i>General</i>	
8. <i>Specific</i>	
9. <i>General</i>	
10. <i>Specific</i>	
11. <i>General</i>	
12. <i>Specific</i>	
13. <i>General</i>	
14. <i>Specific</i>	
15. <i>General</i>	
16. <i>Specific</i>	
17. <i>General</i>	
18. <i>Specific</i>	
19. <i>General</i>	
20. <i>Specific</i>	
21. <i>General</i>	
22. <i>Specific</i>	
23. <i>General</i>	
24. <i>Specific</i>	
25. <i>General</i>	
26. <i>Specific</i>	
27. <i>General</i>	
28. <i>Specific</i>	
29. <i>General</i>	
30. <i>Specific</i>	
31. <i>General</i>	
32. <i>Specific</i>	
33. <i>General</i>	
34. <i>Specific</i>	
35. <i>General</i>	
36. <i>Specific</i>	
37. <i>General</i>	
38. <i>Specific</i>	
39. <i>General</i>	
40. <i>Specific</i>	
41. <i>General</i>	
42. <i>Specific</i>	
43. <i>General</i>	
44. <i>Specific</i>	
45. <i>General</i>	
46. <i>Specific</i>	
47. <i>General</i>	
48. <i>Specific</i>	
49. <i>General</i>	
50. <i>Specific</i>	
51. <i>General</i>	
52. <i>Specific</i>	
53. <i>General</i>	
54. <i>Specific</i>	
55. <i>General</i>	
56. <i>Specific</i>	
57. <i>General</i>	
58. <i>Specific</i>	
59. <i>General</i>	
60. <i>Specific</i>	
61. <i>General</i>	
62. <i>Specific</i>	
63. <i>General</i>	
64. <i>Specific</i>	
65. <i>General</i>	
66. <i>Specific</i>	
67. <i>General</i>	
68. <i>Specific</i>	
69. <i>General</i>	
70. <i>Specific</i>	
71. <i>General</i>	
72. <i>Specific</i>	
73. <i>General</i>	
74. <i>Specific</i>	
75. <i>General</i>	
76. <i>Specific</i>	
77. <i>General</i>	
78. <i>Specific</i>	
79. <i>General</i>	
80. <i>Specific</i>	
81. <i>General</i>	
82. <i>Specific</i>	
83. <i>General</i>	
84. <i>Specific</i>	
85. <i>General</i>	
86. <i>Specific</i>	
87. <i>General</i>	
88. <i>Specific</i>	
89. <i>General</i>	
90. <i>Specific</i>	
91. <i>General</i>	
92. <i>Specific</i>	
93. <i>General</i>	
94. <i>Specific</i>	
95. <i>General</i>	
96. <i>Specific</i>	
97. <i>General</i>	
98. <i>Specific</i>	
99. <i>General</i>	
100. <i>Specific</i>	

Method and system for processing financial instrument deposits
physically remote from a financial institution

PTO-2040
12/99[illegible]

<input type="checkbox"/> TERMINAL DISCLAIMER	DRAWINGS			CLAIMS ALLOWED	
	Sheets Drwg.	Figs. Drwg.	Print Fig.	Total Claims	Print Claim for O.G.
<input type="checkbox"/> The term of this patent subsequent to _____ (date) has been disclaimed. <input type="checkbox"/> The term of this patent shall not extend beyond the expiration date of U.S. Patent. No. _____ _____ _____	_____ (Assistant Examiner) _____ (Date)			NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE MAILED	
	_____ _____ (Primary Examiner) _____ (Date)			ISSUE FEE	
				Amount Due	Date Paid
<input type="checkbox"/> The terminal _____ months of this patent have been disclaimed.	_____ (Legal Instruments Examiner) _____ (Date)			ISSUE BATCH NUMBER	

WARNING: The information disclosed herein may be restricted. Unauthorized disclosure may be prohibited by the United States Code Title 35, Sections 122, 181 and 368. Possession outside the U.S. Patent & Trademark Office is restricted to authorized employees and contractors only.

Form **PTO-436A**
(Rev. 6/99)

FILED WITH: ☐ DISK (CRF) ☐ FICHE ☐ CD-ROM
(Attached in pocket on right inside flap)

(FACE)

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

SEARCHED

Class	Sub.	Date	Exmr.
705	40, 42, 43, 44 45, 16, 17	8/8/00	nr
Updated above 235	379, 380 381,	4/19/02	nr
Updated above		3/10/03	nr
Updated above		10/17/03	nr
Updated above		3/19/04	nr

INTERFERENCE SEARCHED

Class	Sub.	Date	Exmr.

**SEARCH NOTES
(INCLUDING SEARCH STRATEGY)**

	Date	Exmr.
STN & WEST	8/8/00	nr
Updated above	4/10/02	nr
WEST - last seen (see att.)	3/10/03	nr
Updated above	10/17/03	nr
Updated above	3/19/04	nr

(RIGHT OUTSIDE)

ISSUE SLIP STAPLE AREA (for additional cross references)

POSITION	INITIALS	ID NO.	DATE
FEE DETERMINATION	A.H.	42192	5/9/10
O.I.P.E. CLASSIFIER	R.S.B.		5/12/10
FORMALITY REVIEW			
RESPONSE FORMALITY REVIEW	X.B.	40303	7-9

INDEX OF CLAIMS

✓ Rejected N Non-elected
 = Allowed I Interference
 - (Through numeral) ... Canceled A Appeal
 + Restricted O Objected

APPLICANT
09/1APPLICANTS
Date
W1
Met
Ph

TITLE

CLASS

INTERNAL

TECHNICAL
DIS
☐ The term
subsequent
has been di

☐ The term
not extend
of U.S. Pat

☐ The term
this patent

WARNING
 The information
possession of
Form PTO-439
(Rev. 1999)

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

Claim	Final	Original	Date
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			
18			
19			
20			
21			
22			
23			
24			
25			
26			
27			
28			
29			
30			
31			
32			
33			
34			
35			
36			
37			
38			
39			
40			
41			
42			
43			
44			
45			
46			
47			
48			
49			
50			

Claim	Final	Original	Date
51			
52			
53			
54			
55			
56			
57			
58			
59			
60			
61			
62			
63			
64			
65			
66			
67			
68			
69			
70			
71			
72			
73			
74			
75			
76			
77			
78			
79			
80			
81			
82			
83			
84			
85			
86			
87			
88			
89			
90			
91			
92			
93			
94			
95			
96			
97			
98			
99			
100			

Claim	Final	Original	Date
101			
102			
103			
104			
105			
106			
107			
108			
109			
110			
111			
112			
113			
114			
115			
116			
117			
118			
119			
120			
121			
122			
123			
124			
125			
126			
127			
128			
129			
130			
131			
132			
133			
134			
135			
136			
137			
138			
139			
140			
141			
142			
143			
144			
145			
146			
147			
148			
149			
150			

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

If more than 150 claims or 10 actions
staple additional sheet here

(LEFT INSIDE)

05-01-00

A

Express Mail Label No. EL550340765US

**UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL
(Large Entity)**

(Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 CFR 1.53(b))

Docket No.
7905.15

Total Pages in this Submission

TO THE ASSISTANT COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTSBox Patent Application
Washington, D.C. 20231

Transmitted herewith for filing under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) and 37 C.F.R. 1.53(b) is a new utility patent application for an invention entitled:

**METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY
REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION**

and invented by:

**Danne L. Buchanan
William Ronald Titus**If a **CONTINUATION APPLICATION**, check appropriate box and supply the requisite information:☐ Continuation ☐ Divisional ☐ Continuation-in-part (CIP) of prior application No.: _____

Which is a:

☐ Continuation ☐ Divisional ☐ Continuation-in-part (CIP) of prior application No.: _____

Which is a:

☐ Continuation ☐ Divisional ☐ Continuation-in-part (CIP) of prior application No.: _____

Enclosed are:

Application Elements

1. ☒ Filing fee as calculated and transmitted as described below
2. ☒ Specification having fifty-two (52) pages and including the following:
 - a. ☒ Descriptive Title of the Invention
 - b. ☐ Cross References to Related Applications (if applicable)
 - c. ☐ Statement Regarding Federally-sponsored Research/Development (if applicable)
 - d. ☐ Reference to Microfiche Appendix (if applicable)
 - e. ☒ Background of the Invention
 - f. ☒ Brief Summary of the Invention
 - g. ☒ Brief Description of the Drawings (if drawings filed)
 - h. ☒ Detailed Description
 - i. ☒ Claim(s) as Classified Below
 - j. ☒ Abstract of the Disclosure

UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL (Larg Entity)

(Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 CFR 1.53(b))

Docket No.
7905.15

Total Pages in this Submission

Application Elements (Continued)

3. ☒ Drawing(s) (when necessary as prescribed by 35 USC 113)
 - a. ☒ Formal Number of Sheets fifteen (15)
 - b. ☐ Informal Number of Sheets _____
4. ☒ Oath or Declaration
 - a. ☒ Newly executed (original or copy) ☐ Unexecuted
 - b. ☐ Copy from a prior application (37 CFR 1.63(d)) (for continuation/divisional application only)
 - c. ☒ With Power of Attorney ☐ Without Power of Attorney
 - d. ☐ DELETION OF INVENTOR(S)
Signed statement attached deleting inventor(s) named in the prior application, see 37 C.F.R. 1.63(d)(2) and 1.33(b).
5. ☐ Incorporation By Reference (usable if Box 4b is checked)
The entire disclosure of the prior application, from which a copy of the oath or declaration is supplied under Box 4b, is considered as being part of the disclosure of the accompanying application and is hereby incorporated by reference therein.
6. ☐ Computer Program in Microfiche (Appendix)
7. ☐ Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Submission (if applicable, all must be included)
 - a. ☐ Paper Copy
 - b. ☐ Computer Readable Copy (identical to computer copy)
 - c. ☐ Statement Verifying Identical Paper and Computer Readable Copy

Accompanying Application Parts

8. ☒ Assignment Papers (cover sheet & document(s))
9. ☐ 37 CFR 3.73(B) Statement (when there is an assignee)
10. ☐ English Translation Document (if applicable)
11. ☐ Information Disclosure Statement/PTO-1449 ☐ Copies of IDS Citations
12. ☐ Preliminary Amendment
13. ☒ Acknowledgment postcard
14. ☒ Certificate of Mailing

☐ First Class ☒ Express Mail (Specify Label No.): EL550340765US

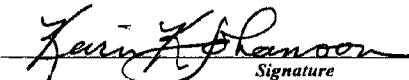
UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL
(Larg Entity)*(Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 CFR 1.53(b))*Docket No.
7905.15

Total Pages in this Submission

Acc mpanying Application Parts (C ntinued)15. ☐ Certified Copy of Priority Document(s) *(if foreign priority is claimed)*16. ☐ Additional Enclosures *(please identify below):***Fee Calculation and Transmittal****CLAIMS AS FILED**

For	#Filed	#Allowed	#Extra	Rate	Fee
Total Claims	32	- 20 =	12	x \$18.00	\$216.00
Indep. Claims	4	- 3 =	1	x \$78.00	\$78.00
Multiple Dependent Claims (check if applicable) <input type="checkbox"/>					\$0.00
BASIC FEE					\$690.00
OTHER FEE (specify purpose) <u>Assignment Recordation Fee</u>					\$40.00
TOTAL FILING FEE					\$1,024.00

- ☒ A check in the amount of **\$1,024.00** to cover the filing fee is enclosed.
- ☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge and credit Deposit Account No. **23-3178** as described below. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.
- ☐ Charge the amount of _____ as filing fee.
- ☒ Credit any overpayment.
- ☒ Charge any additional filing fees required under 37 C.F.R. 1.16 and 1.17.
- ☐ Charge the issue fee set in 37 C.F.R. 1.18 at the mailing of the Notice of Allowance, pursuant to 37 C.F.R. 1.311(b).

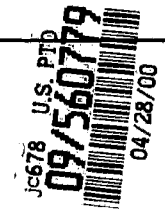
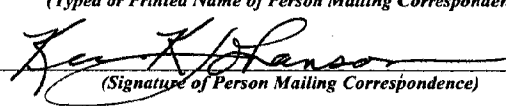


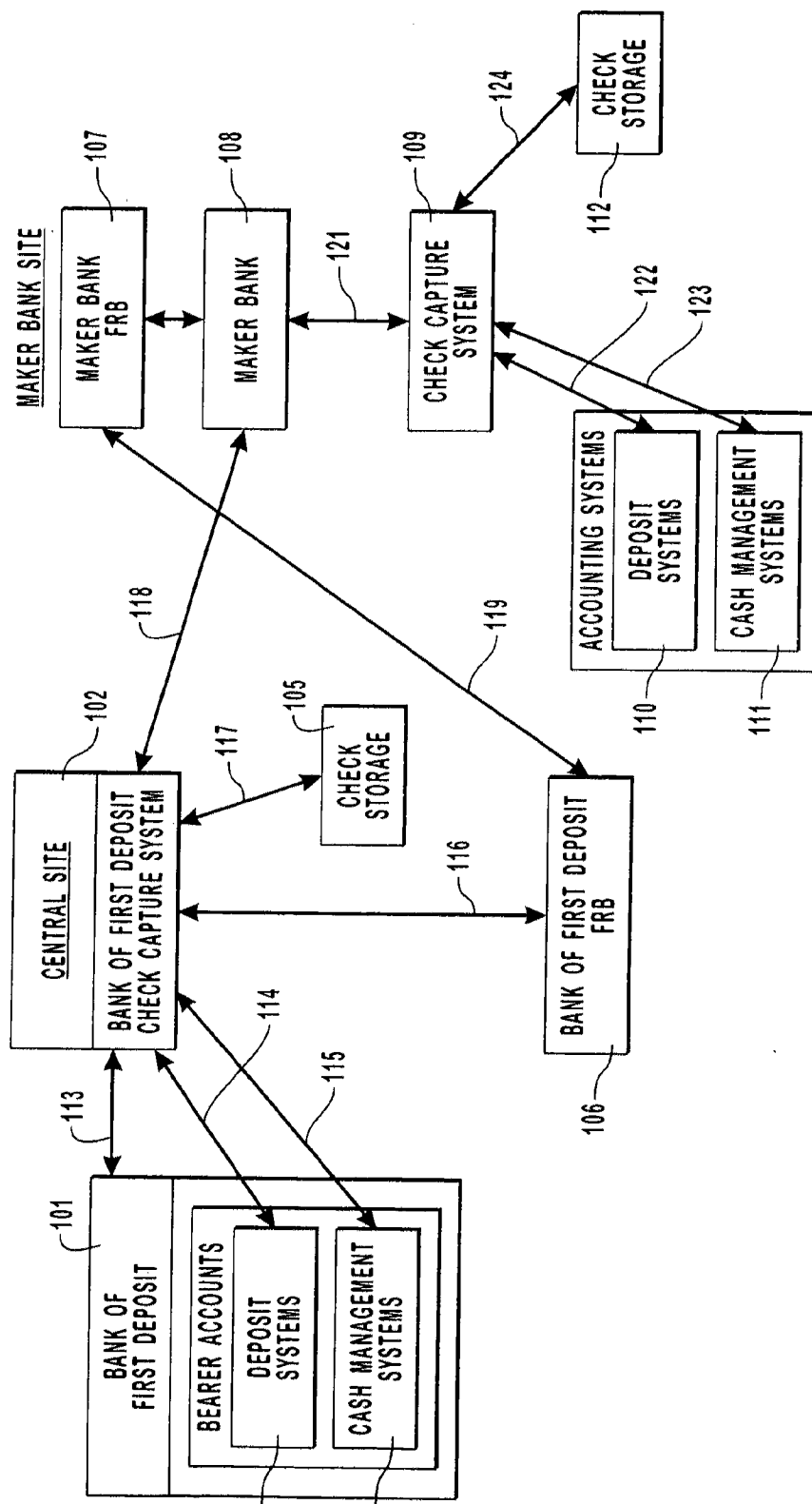
Signature

Kevin K. Johanson
 Registration No. 38,506
 WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
 60 East South Temple
 1000 Eagle Gate Tower
 Salt Lake City, Utah 84111
 Telephone: (801) 533-9800
 Facsimile: (801) 328-1707

Dated: April 28, 2000

cc:

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY "EXPRESS MAIL" (37 CFR 1.10)			Docket No. 7905.15
Applicant(s): Danne L. Buchanan and William Ronald Titus			
Serial No.	Filing Date April 28, 2000	Examiner	Group Art Unit
Invention: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION			
<div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 50px;">  </div> <p>I hereby certify that this <u>Utility Patent Application (including the items listed below)</u> <small>(Identify type of correspondence)</small></p> <p>is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 in an envelope addressed to: The Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C.</p> <p>20231-0001 on <u>April 28, 2000</u> <small>(Date)</small></p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 20px;"> <u>Kevin K. Johanson</u> <small>(Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Correspondence)</small>  <small>(Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence)</small> <u>EL550340765US</u> <small>("Express Mail" Mailing Label Number)</small> </div>			
<p style="text-align: center;">Note: Each paper must have its own certificate of mailing.</p> <p>Transmitted: Utility Patent Application (52 pgs.) Utility Patent Application Transmittal Letter (3 pgs.) Formal Drawings (15 sheets) Declaration, Power of Attorney, and Petition (3 pgs.) Assignment including Recordation Form Cover Sheet (4 pgs.) Check No. <u>115184</u> in the amount of \$1,024.00 Certificate of Mailing by Express Mail Label No. EL550240765US Postcard</p>			



2 / 15

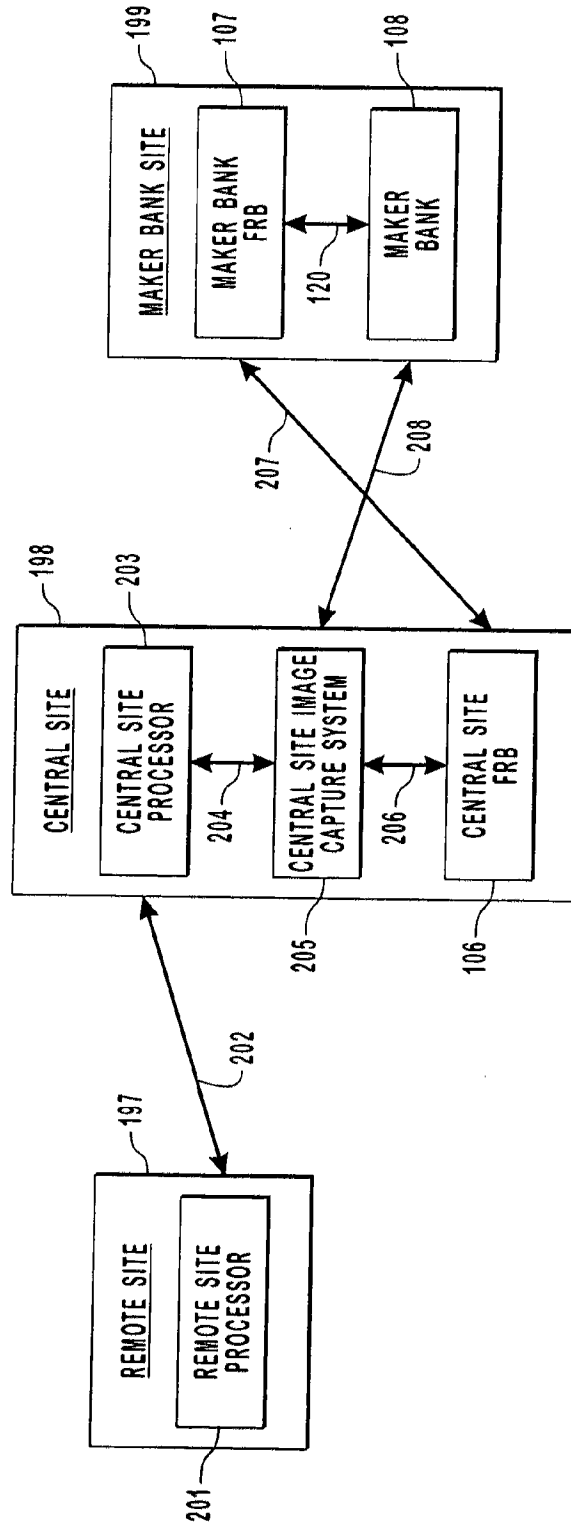


FIG. 2

3 / 15

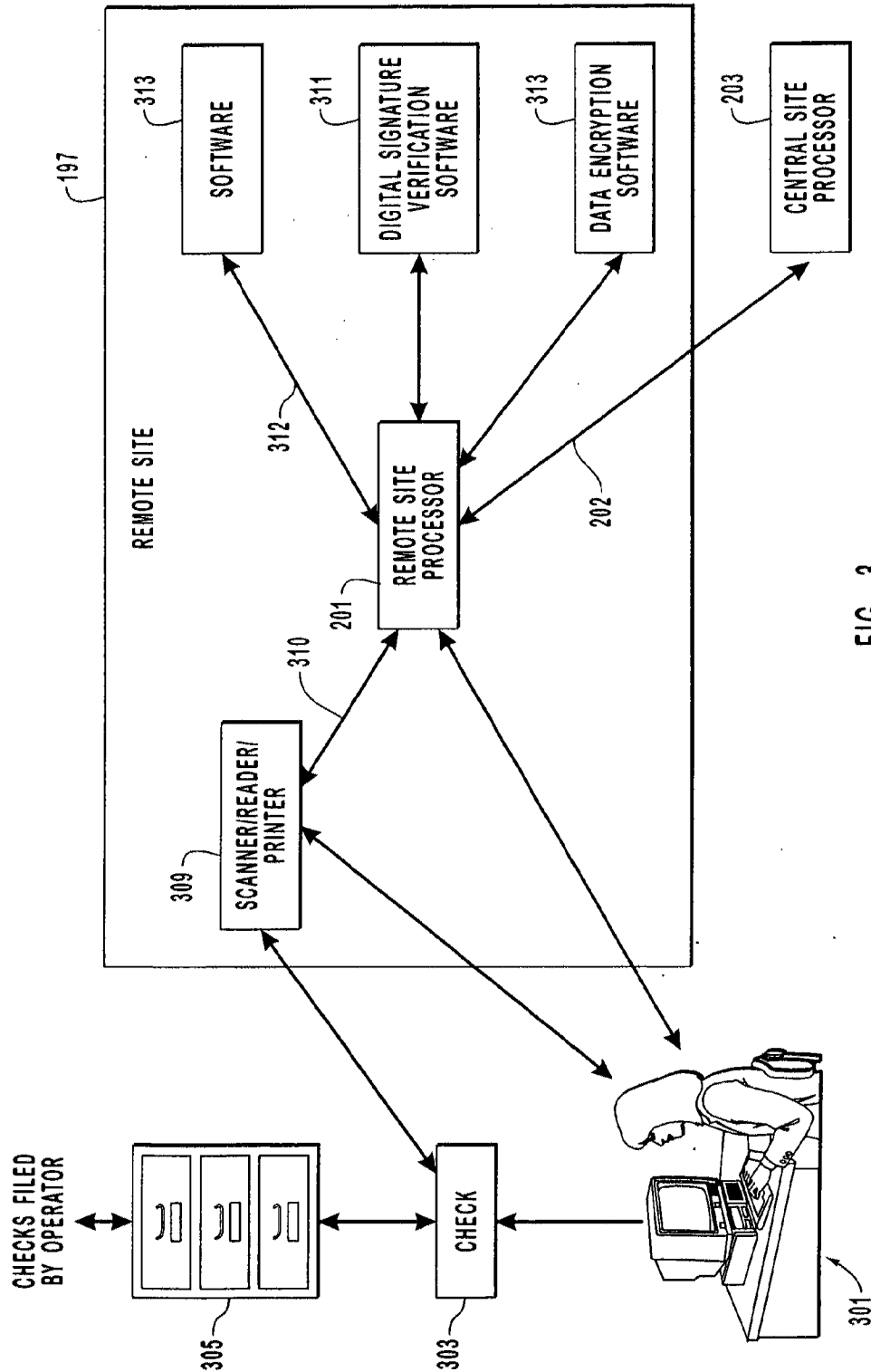


FIG. 3

003470 6/209560

4 / 15

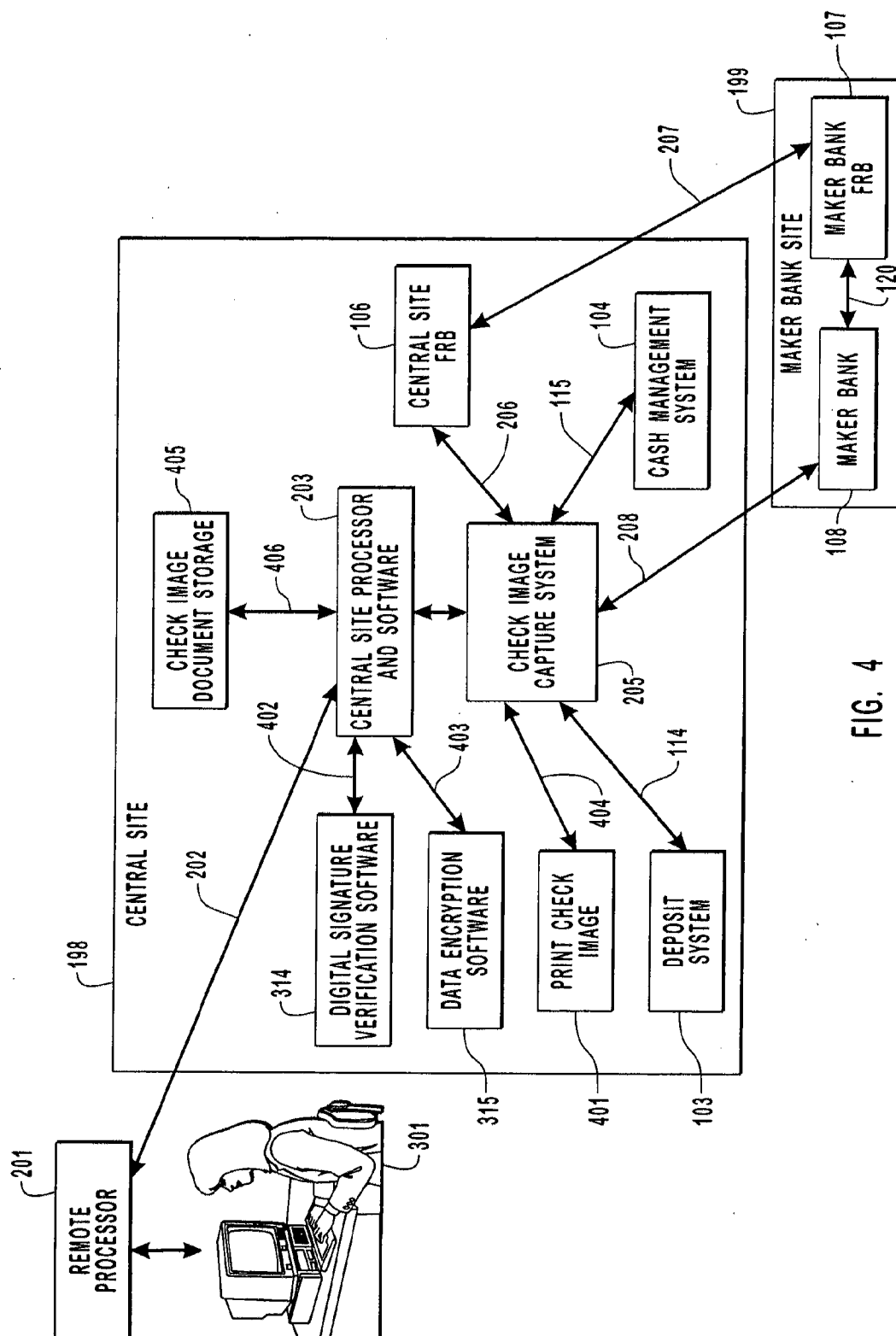


FIG. 4

5 / 15

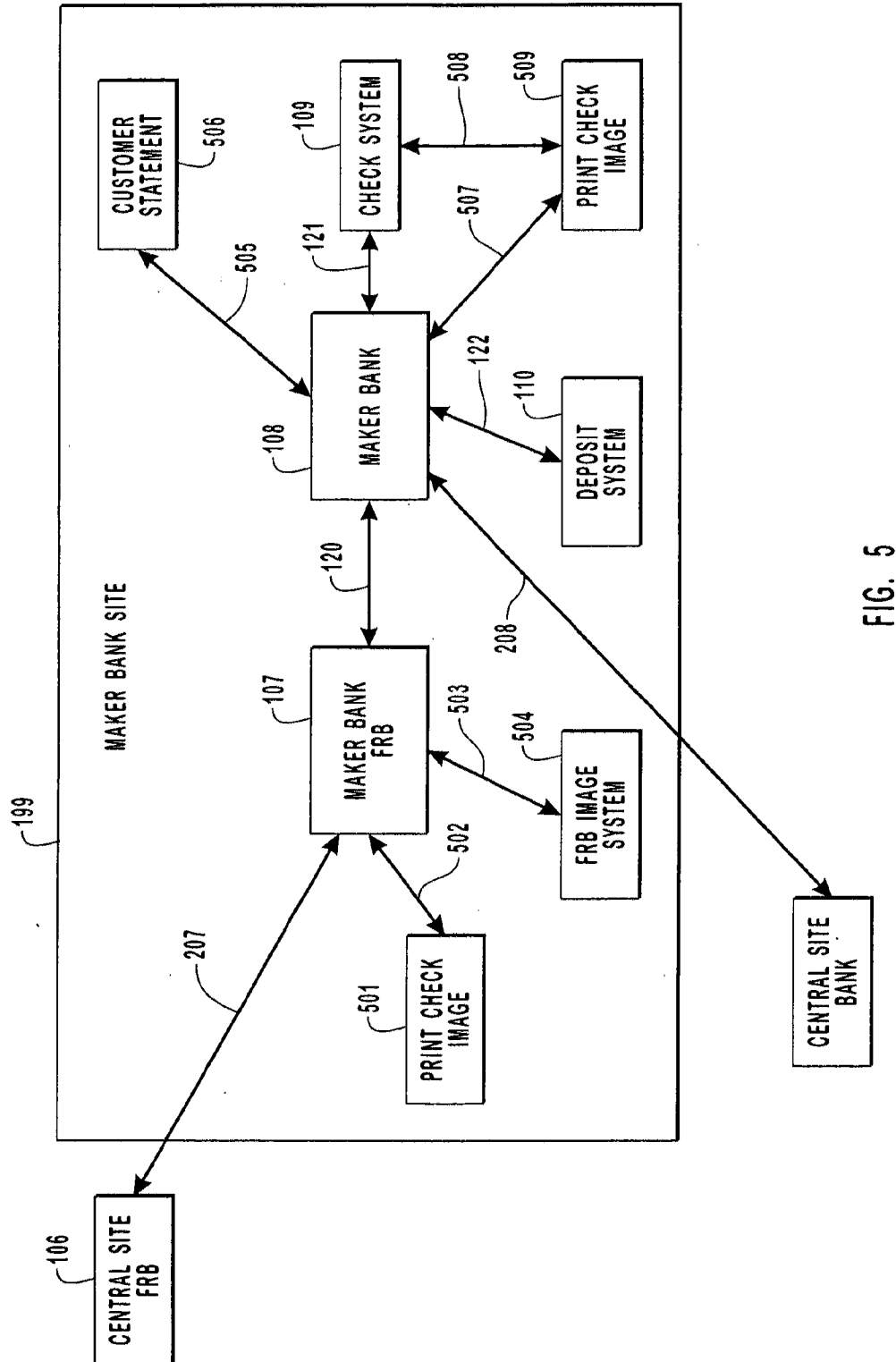


FIG. 5

6 / 15

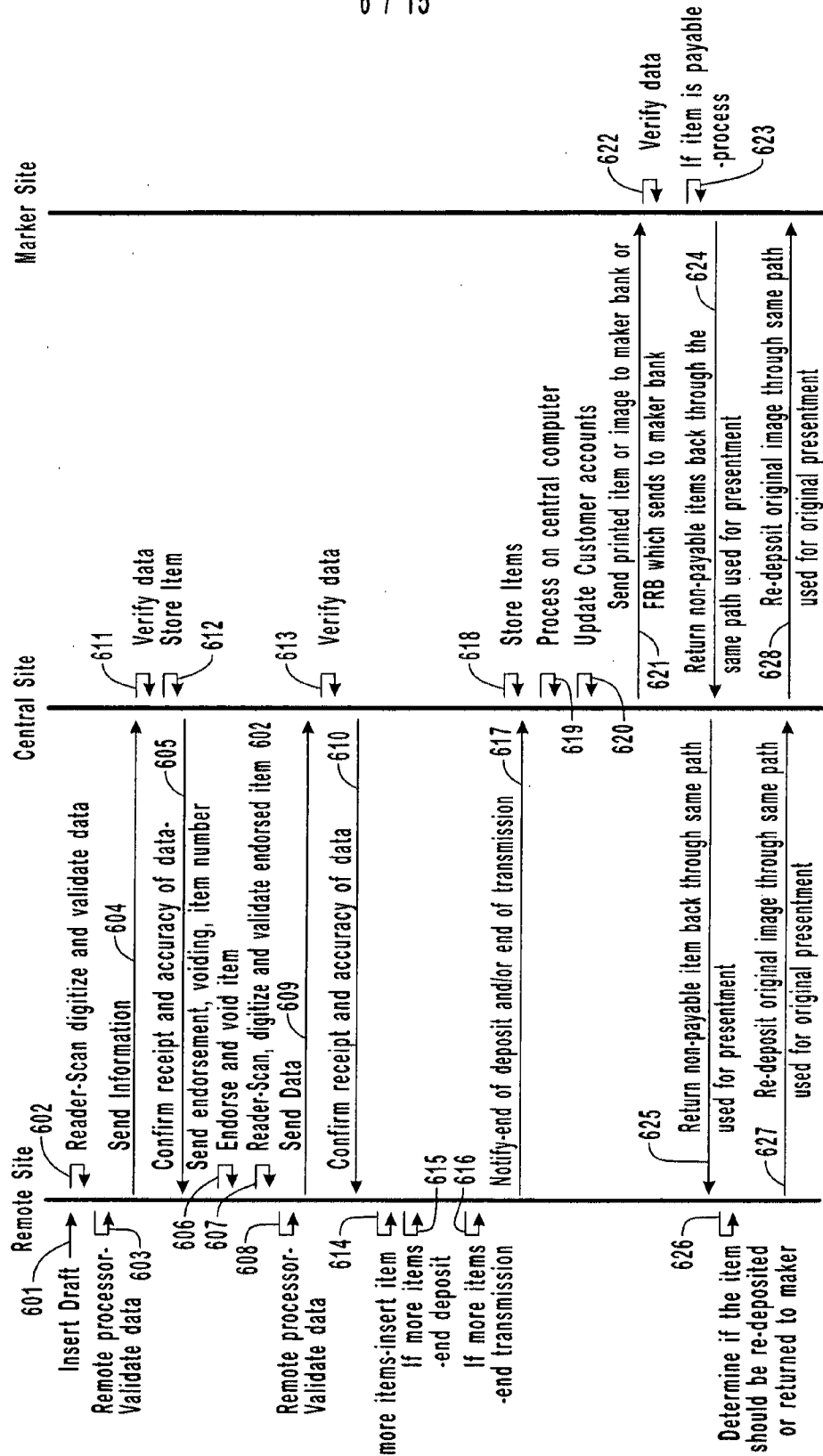
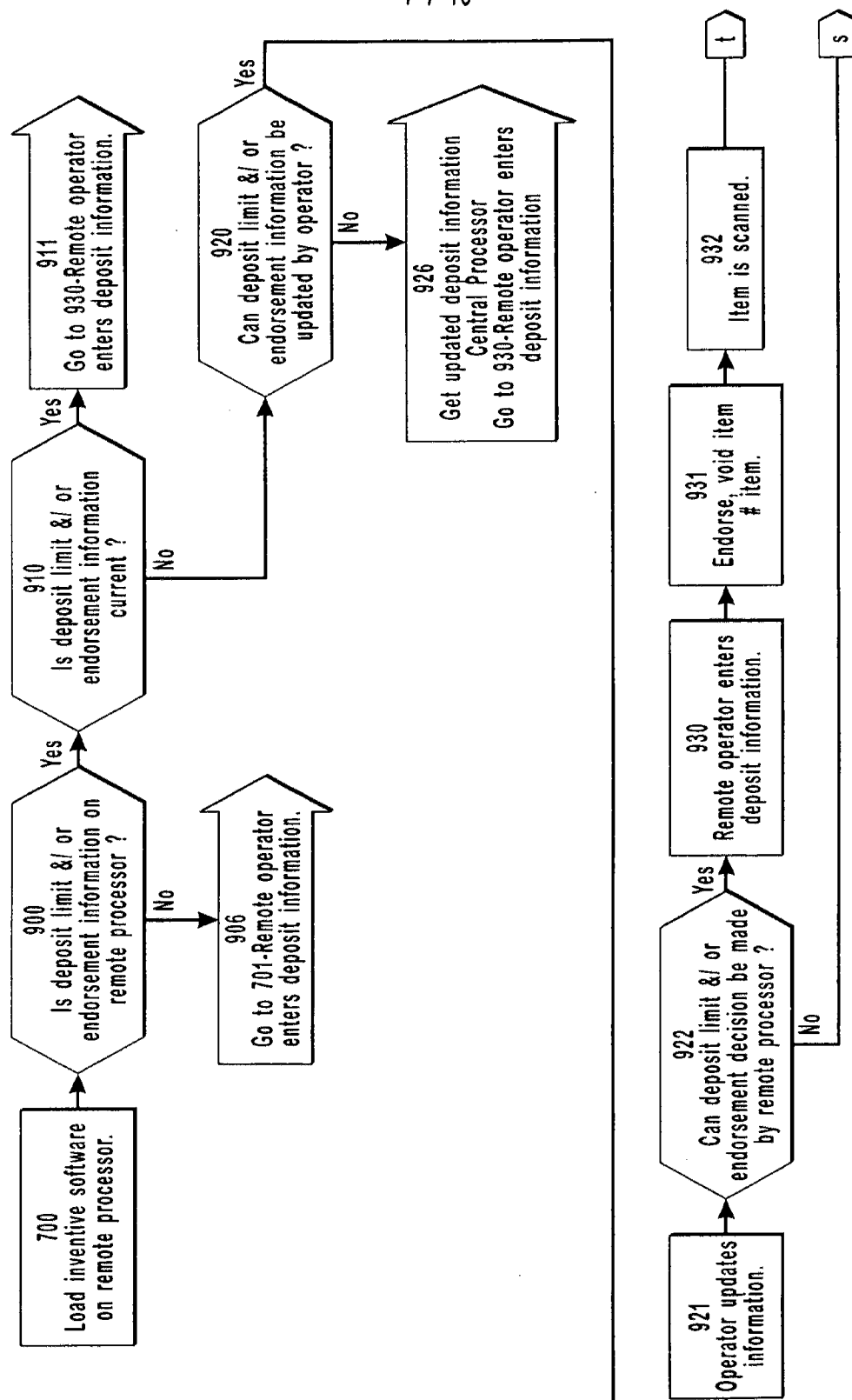


FIG. 6



8 / 15

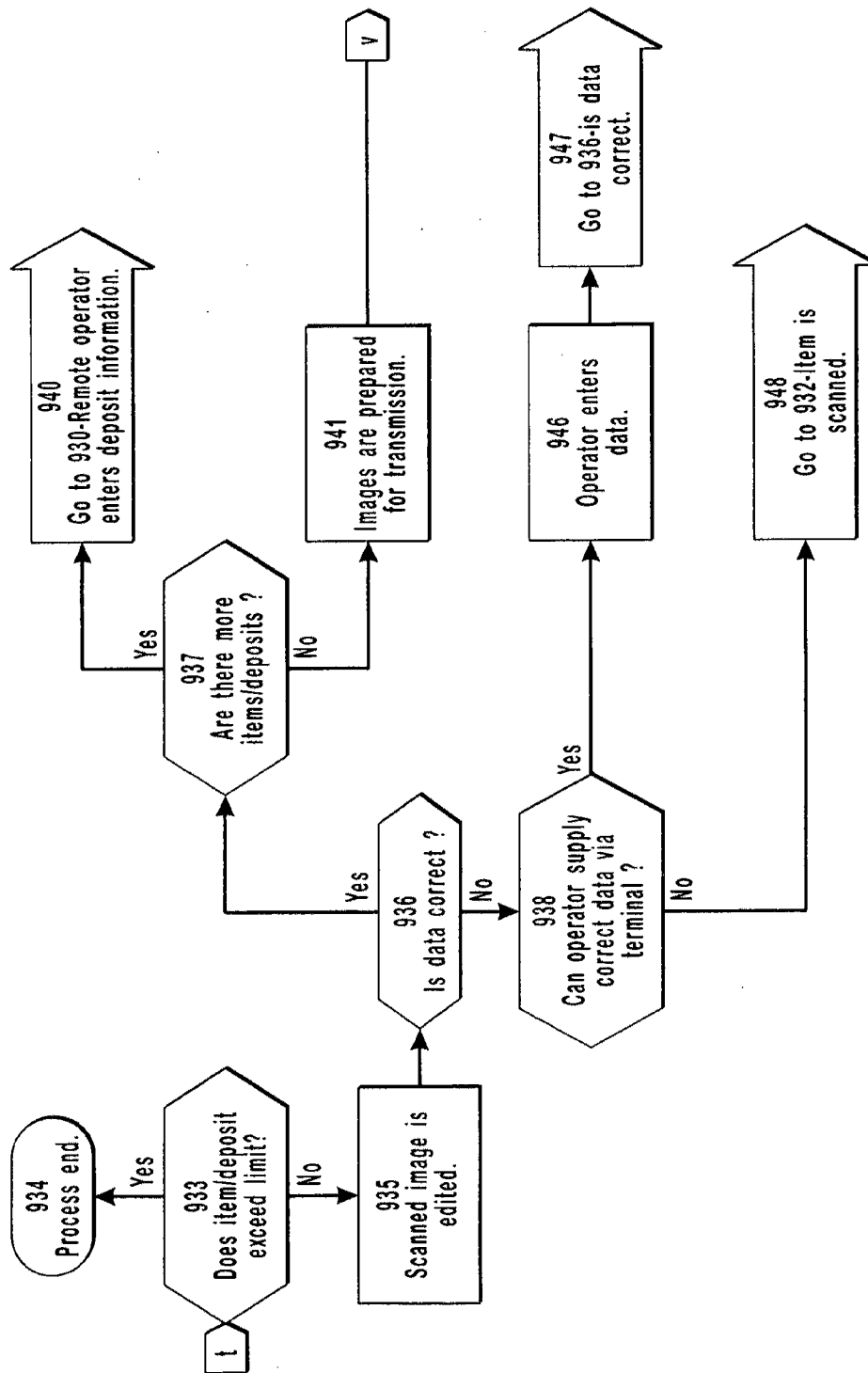


FIG. 7b

9 / 15

000240" 64209560

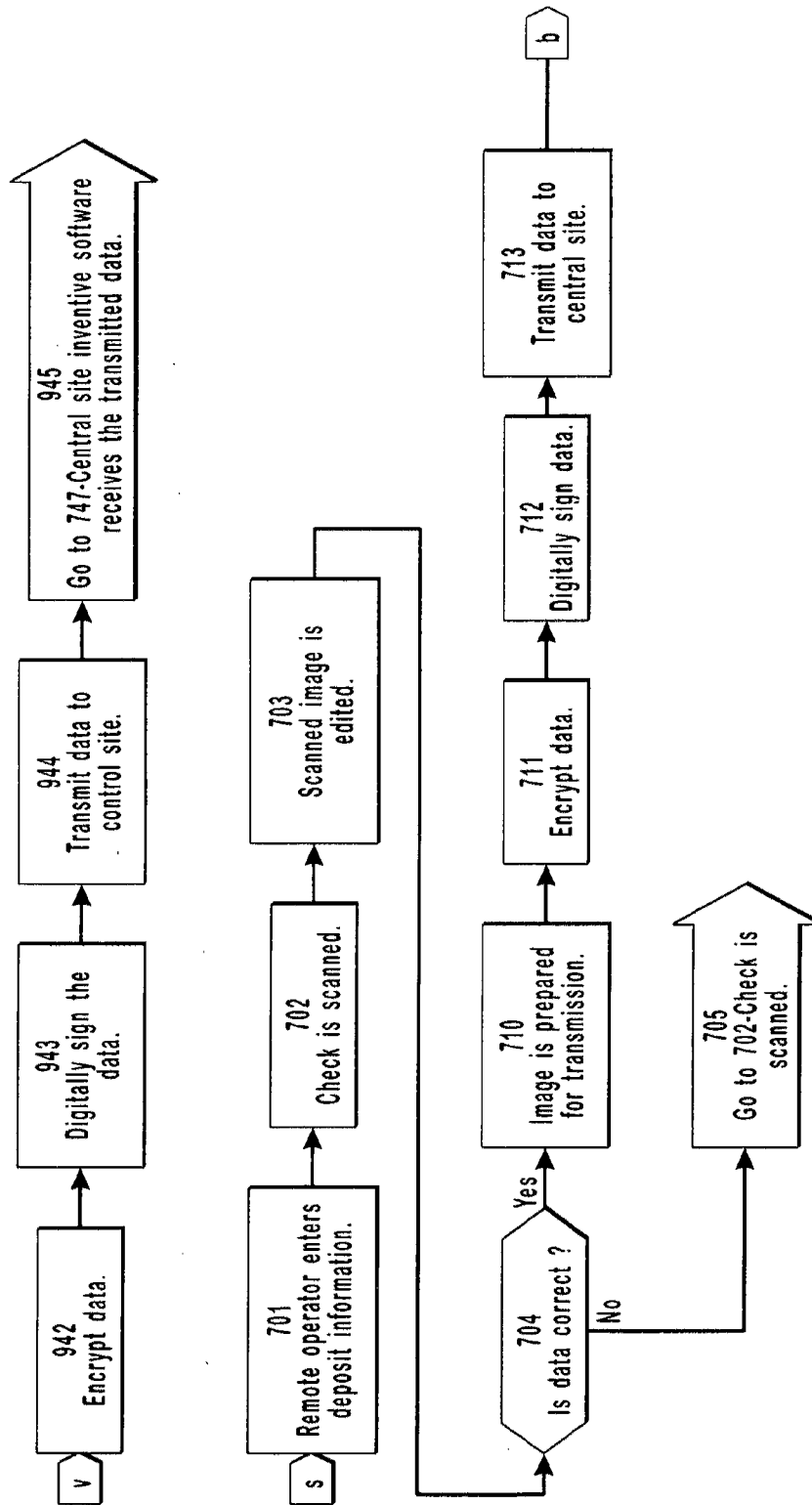


FIG. 7c

10 / 15

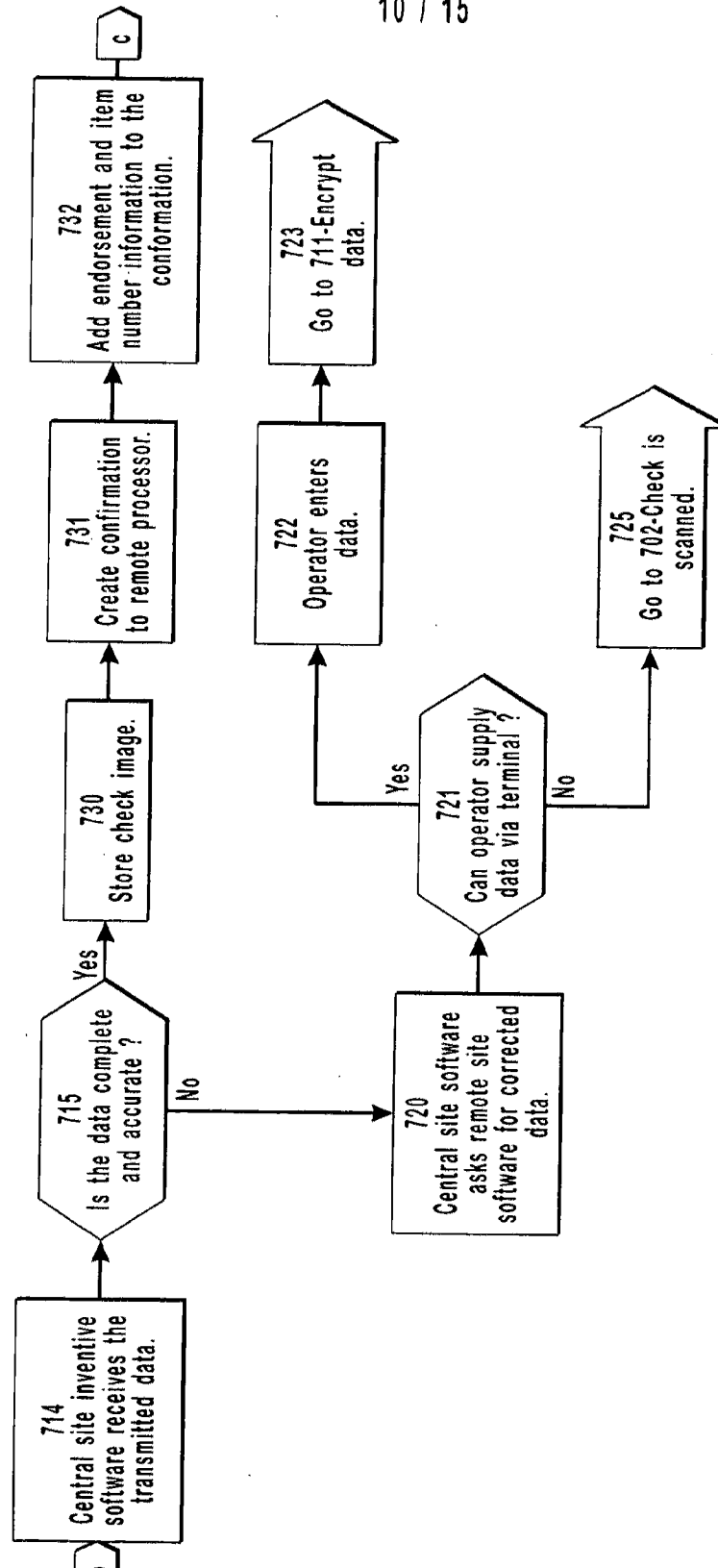
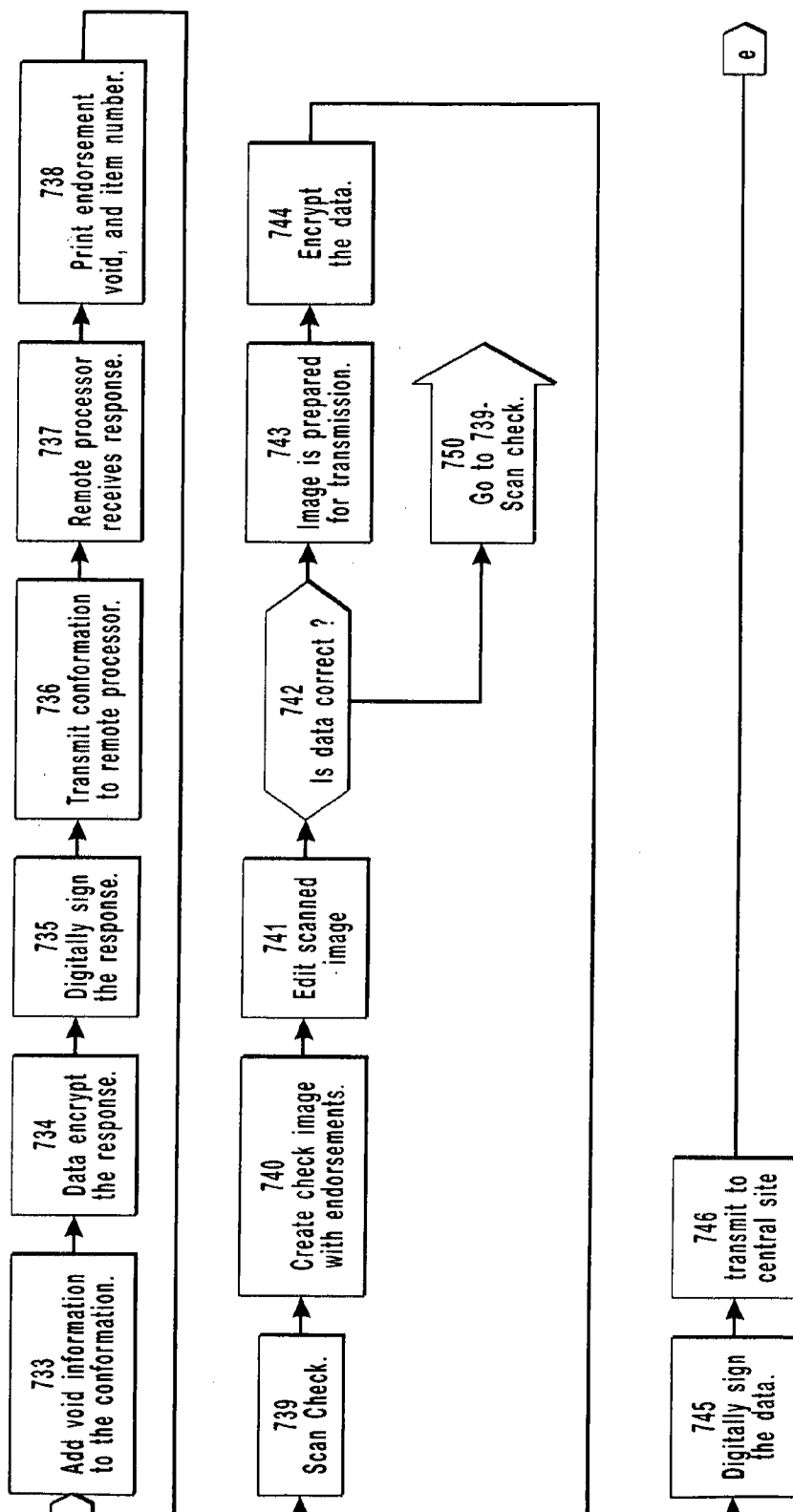


FIG. 7d



12 / 15

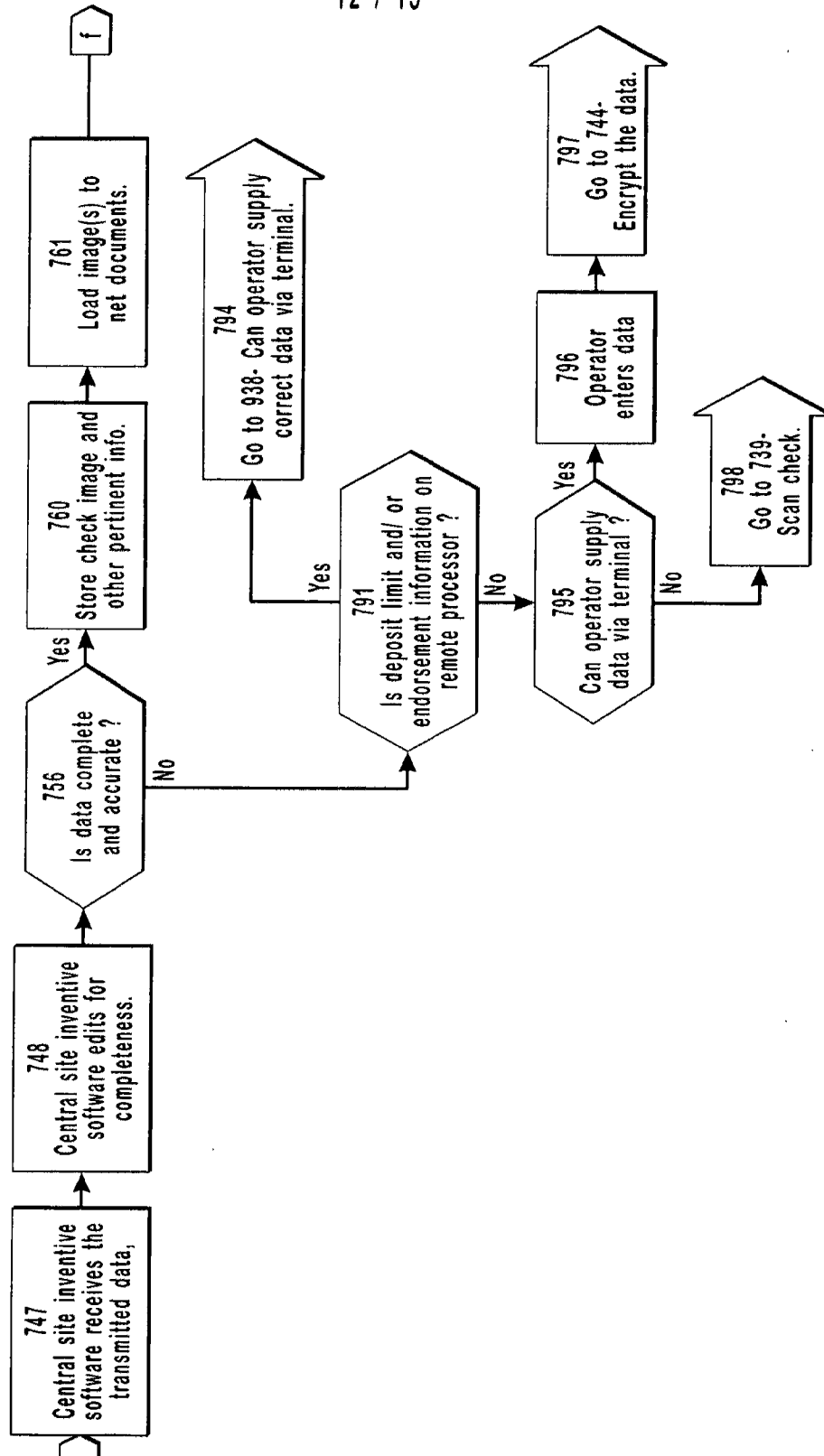


FIG. 7f



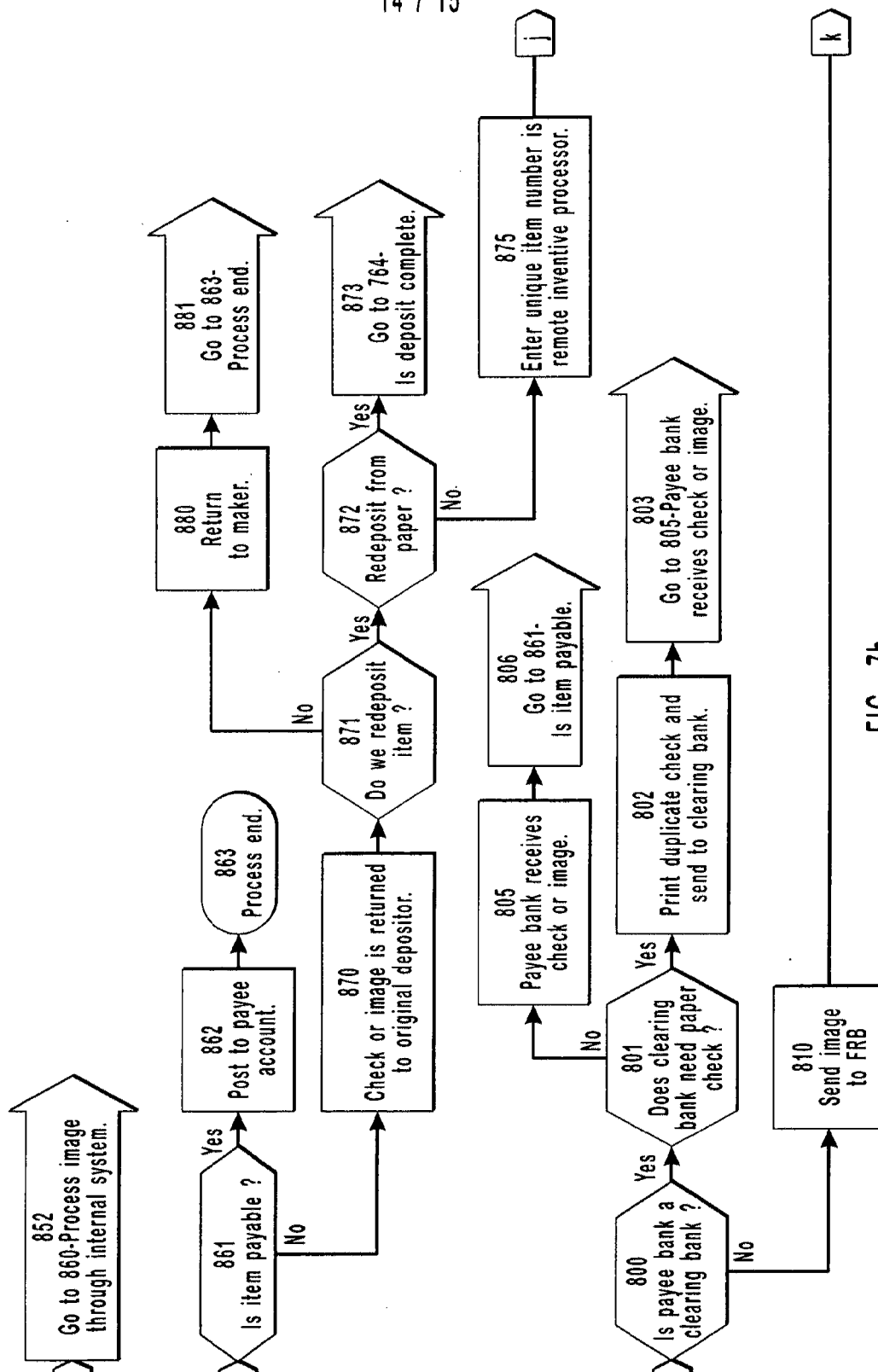


FIG. 7h

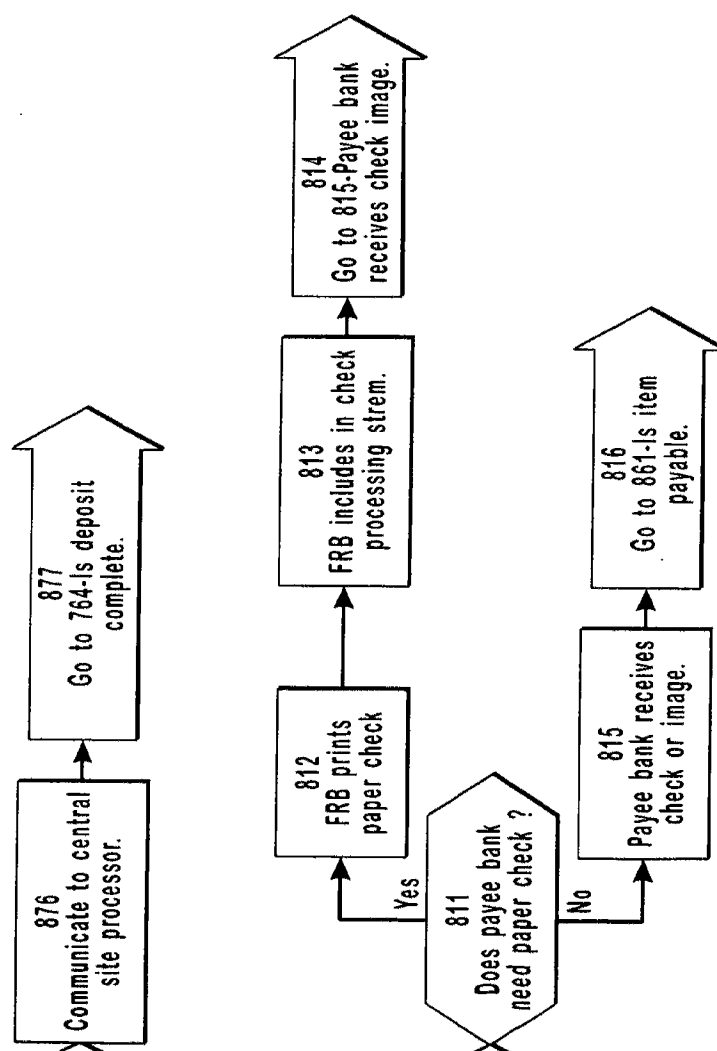


FIG. 7i

Express Mailing L No. EL417646426US

PATENT APPLICATION
Docket No.: 7905.15

UNITED STATES PATENT APPLICATION

of

Danne L. Buchanan

and

William Ronald Titus

for

**METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL
INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE
FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION**

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY, P.C.
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 **BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION**

2 **1. The Field of the Invention**

3 The present invention relates to physical financial instrument processing. More
4 particularly, the present invention relates to a method and system for remotely processing
5 checks through electronic interaction between the physical location of the instrument and
6 a financial institution.

7
8 **2. Related Applications**

9 The act of depositing or otherwise converting a financial instrument such as a
10 check, draft, or other instrument has generally required the physical presentment of the
11 instrument by the bearer to a financial institution such as a bank, credit union, or other
12 institution authorized to accept and process monetary instruments. Indeed, the depositing
13 and clearing of checks has heretofore involved individuals or organizations physically
14 taking their deposit, such as in the form of a check, to financial institutions or trusted
15 remote institutional branches, otherwise known as the bank of first deposit, where the
16 deposit may be accepted, and credited to the bank customer's account, of course, subject
17 to the check "clearing" with the maker financial institution.

18 Financial institutions have developed methods for reducing the amount of paper
19 flow associated with checks within their organizations, however, their target has not been
20 to reduce processing costs, improve the timeliness of the money collection from other
21 financial institutions, and reduce costs associated with handling, storing and returning
22 paper checks to the maker. Therefore, it would be an advancement to provide a new
23 system centered on electronic information that does not require the use of paper items for
24 any purpose.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 Therefore, it would be advantageous to provide an electronic processing system
2 and method that could provide a bearer of a check the convenience to "deposit" a check
3 at a facility, such as a home or office, that is not a traditional bank or bank branch
4 facility.

5 It would also be advantageous to provide a method and system for allowing the
6 remote depositing and processing a check that does not require the physical routing of the
7 actual check in order to accomplish the various post-deposit processing of a check. It
8 would yet be a further advantage to provide a method and system for improving the
9 collection time involved with the funds represented by the check (i.e., reduce credit
10 "float").

11 It would be a benefit to provide a method and system for reducing expenses
12 associated with the transportation costs involved in sending the checks from the bank of
13 first deposit to the maker financial institution.

14 It would also be a benefit to provide a method and system for reducing the check
15 storage expenses incurred by the bank of first deposit.

16 It would be a further benefit to enable the bank of first deposit to reduce the
17 staffing, facilities (i.e., physical buildings), and equipment required to accept and process
18 physical checks.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 **SUMMARY AND OBJECTS OF THE INVENTION**

2 The present invention has been designed to reduce the issues associated with the
3 physical handling of paper items by financial institutions and to improve the collections
4 of associated funds by processing electronic images of checks as opposed to the slower
5 method of sending paper checks through the traditional check clearing routes. Not
6 withstanding the premise for the inventive processes to use electronic images of items to
7 facilitate processing and clearing of items, it would also be desirable for the present
8 invention to accommodate the current use of paper items and all other commonly
9 accepted methods for clearing checks until such time as the use of electronic images
10 becomes a common accepted practice for clearing checks.

11 This new process involves inventive computer-based software that can be used at
12 financial institution locations and locations remote from financial institution offices for
13 capturing deposits, together herein referred to as remote locations. The remote capture
14 system can be used by individuals and businesses (including the financial institution) to
15 capture deposit information and images of the monetary items, such as checks, required
16 for depositing the checks into their deposit accounts at the financial institution. Once this
17 information is captured and validated at the remote site, it is transferred to the financial
18 institution over telecommunications lines (leased lines, switched lines, Internet, etc.) to a
19 receiving computer at the financial institution. The financial institution computer verifies
20 the information received, stores the image of the items, and passes back to the remote site
21 computer information that is used by the remote site computer to endorse, cancel, and
22 item number, and otherwise mark, void, and identify the check. Another image of the
23 check is then created at the remote location showing the endorsements information. This
24 image is then sent to the central site of the financial institution for storage and to be used

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 for research and re-depositing of the check if this becomes necessary. The depositor
2 retains the deposit slips and monetary item(s) at the remote site.

3 As an alternative to the interactive process of passing voiding, endorsing, unique
4 number information back and forth between the central site and the remote site, it will be
5 possible (based on parameters set in the inventive software) to do most of the decision-
6 making on the remote site processor before transmitting the check information to the
7 central site. This can be done by pre-loading the endorsement, voiding, and item
8 numbering information on the remote site processor and/or updating on a regular basis.
9 This allows for checks to be endorsed, voided and item numbered and the image(s)
10 associated with a check deposit to be created and passed to the central site without the
11 need for interactive validation of data between the remote and central sites.

12 In addition to deposits, decisions based on remote site information, the present
13 invention also allows deposits of any number, combination, and dollar amounts of
14 deposit, and checks based upon decisions made regarding the customer by information
15 stored at the central site. This information can be loaded onto the central site and
16 communicated to the remote processor as part of the interactive exchange of data during
17 the process of validating the deposit. Additionally, this information while being pre-
18 loaded on the remote processor can also be updated on a regular basis.

19 Once complete deposit data is received by the central site processor at the bank of
20 first deposit's central site, it is passed to the central site's check processing, deposit, and
21 cash management, etc., systems for processing. As an alternative, if the remote site or
22 central site is being used as a collection center for deposits from other institutions, the
23 deposit information can be passed to the other institutions check processing, deposit, and
24 cash management, etc., systems for processing. The image of the checks can be used to

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 either print the customer statements (for items drawn on the bank of first deposit or
2 routed through the normal check clearing paths (i.e. directly to clearing and
3 correspondent banks or through the FRB electronic clearing process). If the maker or
4 maker bank(s) require physical checks for their internal purposes, a duplicate check is
5 printed by either the bank of first deposit's central site, or the maker bank or by the maker
6 banks FRB.

7 Once received by the maker bank, the check image or duplicate printed check is
8 processed by the maker bank through their computer systems and included as per their
9 policies in their customer statements. Checks returned to the depositor for any reason
10 will take the reverse path back to the depositor. Any re-depositing of items by the
11 original depositor is done using the either the printed duplicate paper item (if there is one)
12 or the original endorsed image created and stored at the bank of first deposit's central
13 site.

14 All transmission of data preferably undergoes digital signature verification and
15 certification and data encryption to ensure privacy and confidentiality of the data being
16 transmitted. In addition, the check images will be stored on a document storage database
17 at the remote site or bank of first deposit as well as Internet enabled and accessible
18 database(s). The information on these database(s) will be available to the depositor and
19 research personnel at the bank of first deposit's central site under security control through
20 remote access such as Internet access.

21 The system includes computer hardware, computer software, apparatus, and
22 methodology that enables individuals, businesses, and all types of organizations (both for
23 profit and non-profit) to capture and securely transmit check images (including, but not
24 limited to, personal checks, business checks, travelers checks, money orders, merchant

1 coupons, food coupons, line of credit checks, etc.), deposit information, and other
2 information from remote locations (i.e., locations that could include the financial
3 institution's remote locations, other financial institution's locations, businesses, private
4 residences, etc.), for the purpose of having those checks credited to the depositing
5 individual's or organization's bank account(s) and having the check images (and/or
6 physical checks) entered into the bank check clearing channels for ultimate delivery to
7 the maker bank for payment out of the maker's account.

8 These and other objects and features of the present invention will become more
9 fully apparent from the following description and appended claims, or may be learned by
10 the practice of the invention as set forth hereinafter.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 **BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

2 A more extensive description of the present invention, including the above-recited
3 features, advantages, and objects, will be rendered with reference to the specific
4 embodiments that are illustrated in the appended drawings. Because these drawings
5 depict only exemplary embodiments, the drawings should not be construed as imposing
6 any limitation on the present invention's scope. As such, the present invention will be
7 described and explained with additional specificity and detail through use of the
8 accompanying drawings in which:

9 Figure 1 illustrates an overview of a process of capturing and processing deposits
10 from financial institutions and their branches which can be adapted to incorporate some
11 of the features of the present invention;

12 Figure 2 illustrates an overview of remotely capturing and processing deposits
13 remote from a financial branch or bank, in accordance with a preferred embodiment of
14 the present invention;

15 Figure 3 is a more detailed block diagram showing the capturing and processing
16 at the remote site or point of check presentment, in accordance with a preferred
17 embodiment of the present invention;

18 Figure 4 illustrates central site processing of image data as captured at the remote
19 site, in accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

20 Figure 5 illustrates processing at the maker or payor institution site, in accordance
21 with a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

22 Figure 6 illustrates a processing diagram of the interaction between entities of the
23 present invention; and

24 Figure 7 is a process flowchart of check processing of the present invention.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 **DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS**

2 The invention is described below with reference to drawings. These drawings
3 illustrate certain details of specific embodiments that implement the systems and methods
4 of the present invention. However, describing the invention with drawings should not be
5 construed as imposing, on the invention, any limitations that may be present in the
6 drawings. The present invention contemplates both methods and systems for remotely
7 accepting a check for deposit and electronically processing the deposit without physically
8 routing the physical paper copy of the check. The embodiments of the present invention
9 may comprise a special purpose or general purpose computer including various computer
10 hardware, the execution unit portion of which may also be known herein as a
11 “processor.”

12 Embodiments within the scope of the present invention also include computer-
13 readable media for carrying or having computer-executable instructions or data structures
14 stored thereon and also known as software. Such computer-readable media can be any
15 available media which can be accessed by a general purpose or special purpose computer.
16 By way of example, and not limitation, such computer-readable media can comprise
17 RAM, ROM, EPROM, EEPROM, CD-ROM or other optical disk storage, magnetic disk
18 storage or other magnetic storage devices, or any other medium which can be used to
19 carry or store desired program code means in the form of computer-executable
20 instructions or data structures and which can be accessed by a general purpose or special
21 purpose computer. When information is transferred or provided over a network or
22 another communications connection (either hardwired, wireless, or a combination of
23 hardwired or wireless) to a computer, the computer properly views the connection as a
24 computer-readable medium. Thus, any such a connection is properly termed a computer-

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 readable medium. Combinations of the above should also be included within the scope
2 of computer-readable media. Computer-executable instructions comprise, for example,
3 instructions and data which cause a general purpose computer, special purpose computer,
4 or special purpose processing device to perform a certain function or group of functions.
5 Computer-executable instructions may also be properly termed "software" as known by
6 those of skill in the art.

7 Although not required, the invention will be described in the general context of
8 computer-executable instructions, such as program modules, being executed by
9 computers in network environments. Generally, program modules include routines,
10 programs, objects, components, data structures, etc. that perform particular tasks or
11 implement particular abstract data types. Computer-executable instructions, associated
12 data structures, and program modules represent examples of the program code means for
13 executing steps of the methods disclosed herein. The particular sequence of such
14 executable instructions or associated data structures represent examples of corresponding
15 acts for implementing the functions described in such steps.

16 Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the invention may be practiced in
17 network computing environments with many types of computer system configurations,
18 including personal computers, hand-held devices, multi-processor systems,
19 microprocessor-based or programmable consumer electronics, network PCs,
20 minicomputers, mainframe computers, and the like. The invention may also be practiced
21 in distributed computing environments where tasks are performed by local and remote
22 processing devices that are linked (either by hardwired links, wireless links, or by a
23 combination of hardwired or wireless links) through a communications network. In a
24

1 distributed computing environment, program modules may be located in both local and
2 remote memory storage devices.

3 An exemplary system for implementing the portions of the invention includes a
4 general purpose computing device in the form of a conventional computer, including a
5 processing unit, a system memory, and a system bus that couples various system
6 components including the system memory to the processing unit. The system memory
7 may include read only memory (ROM) and random access memory (RAM). The
8 computer may also include a magnetic hard disk drive for reading from and writing to a
9 magnetic hard disk, a magnetic disk drive for reading from or writing to a removable
10 magnetic disk, and an optical disk drive for reading from or writing to removable optical
11 disk such as a CD-ROM or other optical media. The drives and their associated
12 computer-readable media provide nonvolatile storage of computer-executable
13 instructions, data structures, program modules and other data for the computer.

14 Program code or software means comprising one or more program modules may
15 be stored on the hard disk, magnetic disk, optical disk, ROM or RAM, including an
16 operating system, one or more application or software programs, other program modules,
17 and program data.

18 The computer may operate in a networked environment using logical connections
19 to one or more remote computers having processors. Logical connections may include a
20 local area network (LAN) and a wide area network (WAN) that are presented here by
21 way of example and not limitation. Such networking environments are commonplace in
22 office-wide or enterprise-wide computer networks, intranets and the Internet.

23 It should also be pointed out that while the term "check" may be generically used
24 herein, it is contemplated by the inventors that other financial instruments are also

1 contemplated within this meaning and therefore, the use of the term "check" is assumed
2 to have the broader meaning, both in the specification and the claims.

3 Additionally, the term "bank of first deposit" means the financial institution
4 sponsoring the remote site and which owns or employs a central site for processing
5 financial transactions.

6 Referring to Figure 1, a bank of first deposit 101 receives a check from the bearer
7 to begin processing the instrument. Bank of first deposit 101 actually forwards, in step
8 113, the physical check(s) to a central site 102 for additional physical processing of the
9 actual check. The physical check is processed at central site 102 using a reader/sorter
10 (not separately shown but included in 102) to acquire information such as the information
11 stored on the Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) line. This information
12 includes the maker bank number, the account number, a check serial number, etc. The
13 information from the check is then sent to an in-house computer system (included in
14 102) for posting in steps 114, 115 to the appropriate bearer account(s) 103, 104 in the
15 bank of first deposit 101. If the check is an on us item (i.e. an item that is drawn on the
16 bank that is processing it), the check is retained in a step 117 at storage 105 at bank of
17 first deposit 101, otherwise the check is sent in steps 116 and 119 or, alternatively in step
18 118 into a maker bank 108 for collection of funds. The check(s) are either sent
19 physically in step 118 directly to maker bank 108 or routed in steps 116 and 119 through
20 a Federal Reserve Banks (FRB) 106 and 107 check clearing processes to a maker bank
21 108.

22 The path taken by the check is determined by the working agreement that bank of
23 first deposit 101 has with maker bank 108. If maker bank 108 is a member of the local
24 clearing-house association (thereby being a clearing bank), the checks can be exchanged

1 directly with maker bank 108. If the maker bank 108 is a correspondent bank (a bank
2 that has agreed to exchange checks directly with the bank of first deposit) the checks can
3 be sent directly to maker bank 108. All other checks are forwarded in steps 116 and 119
4 to the FRBS, 106 and 107 for exchange with maker bank 108. If a check is not paid by
5 maker bank 108 for any reason (i.e. it is a forgery, there are not sufficient funds in the
6 makers account to cover the amount of the check, etc.) the check is returned to the
7 depositor using the reverse path. Once the check is received by maker bank 108, the
8 check is processed in step 121 through the maker bank's check capture system 109.
9 Information from the check is then sent in steps 122 and 123 to the maker bank's
10 accounting systems 110 and 111 and the checks are either stored in step 124 at the maker
11 bank's check storage 112, or sent directly to the maker with their check statement.

12 Figure 2 depicts a high-level processing diagram of the various entities involved
13 in the overall financial processing of the present invention, in accordance with the
14 preferred embodiment. The present invention comprises three primary processing
15 entities: (i) a remote site 197, (ii) a central site 198, and (iii) a maker bank site 199. Each
16 of these sites enlists specific processing techniques which furthers the novel financial
17 instrument processing technique of the present invention.

18 In the present invention, a remote site processor 201 (further detailed in Figure 3)
19 either autonomously, or under operator/depositor control initially remotely "processes" a
20 check into electronic check data both in the form of image data and informational data
21 which can be further processed and approved at subsequent portions of the overall
22 process. In essence, the remote site provides a processing front-end that electronically
23 interacts via interface 202 with central site 198 through the transfer of electronic check
24 data for review and processing by electronic means at a central site. Remote site 197

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 performs functions relating to the physical check including scanning, reading, and
2 printing on the checks. Remote site 197 also exchanges image and/or authorization data
3 with the other entities as further described below.

4 Central site 198 of Figure 2 interacts via interfaces 207, 208 with maker bank site
5 199 for completing the clearing process relating to the check or related instrument.
6 Central site 198 is comprised of a central site processor 203 which coordinates
7 verification and account interaction. Central site 198 also provides both electronic
8 storage of image and information data as well as providing an interface to maker bank
9 site 199. Central site 198 provides image conversion technology for converting check
10 data from electronic form back to a hard copy check format for processing, printing, and
11 archiving when required by more traditional banking processes. Otherwise, a system 205
12 may process the image of the check in image format. System 205 prevents the need to
13 reprint the check and send the duplicate check through the check reader sorters.

14 Maker bank site 199 performs more traditional account processing of information
15 received from central site 198 such as from central site Federal Reserve Bank 106.
16 Maker bank site 199 is further comprised of maker bank FRB 107 and maker bank 108
17 and engages in account processing and statement generation.

18 Figure 3 depicts the remote site as well as the interaction by a depositor or
19 operator, in accordance with a preferred embodiment. The present invention commences
20 with the presentation of a physical instrument such as a check by a bearer to remote site
21 197. A remote scanner/reader/printer 309 provides the interface to the bearer for
22 presentment of the check. Remote scanner/reader/printer 309, in the preferred
23 embodiment, is a multifunction device capable of independently performing each of the
24 functions of scanning, reading, and printing upon the check or physical financial

1 instrument. It is also contemplated that individual devices for performing each of these
2 functions, scanning-reading-printing, may be integrated, whether automatically or
3 manually, to perform the combination of functions upon the check.

4 Remote scanner/reader/printer 309 is connected via an interface 310 to remote
5 processor 201. Remote site processor 201, like each of the other processor elements in
6 the present invention, may be comprised of execution-capable devices, and is preferably
7 comprised of a computer, such as a personal, network, or general purpose computer.
8 Remote processor 201 is further coupled to central site processor 203 via an interface
9 transmission or network media 202, which may take the form of one or more of wired or
10 wireless media such as public switched lines, Internet or wide-area network connection,
11 microwave, satellite, digital phone, private leased lines, or any other current or future
12 acceptable communications facility and may further employ include encryption over the
13 interface.

14 Remote site processor 201 executes according to executable instructions such as
15 computer-executable instructions which are figuratively depicted in Figure 3 as software
16 313. Software 313 is loaded or interfaces with remote processor 201 via a bus or other
17 physical interface depicted as interface 312. Generally, software 313 is comprised of
18 executable instructions for (i) causing remote site processor 201 to instruct and execute
19 the necessary steps for capturing the check or financial instrument both physically and
20 electronically, (ii) performing requisite data processing on the electronic data from the
21 capturing step, and (iii) exchanging the captured data over interface or media 202 to
22 central site processor 203 when appropriate.

23 While details relating to the processing and method steps executed by remote site
24 processor 201 via software 313 are described below, remote site processor 201 further

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 determines if remote processing decisional information such as comparison information
2 for making decisions on the number of deposits, dollar amount of deposits or dollar
3 amount of monetary items is available on remote site processor 201. If such decisional
4 information is not available at remote site 197, then central site check processing may
5 require additional steps. Remote site processor 201 also determines if the remote
6 processing information needed to void, endorse and itemize number each check 303 is
7 available to remote processor 201 for processing of check 303, according to the method
8 of the present invention. If such remote processing information is available but not
9 current, the remote processing information may be updated by either having the updated
10 information manually entered, for example by way of an operator via a keyboard at
11 terminal 301 attached to remote processor 201, or the updated information may be
12 retrieved by remote processor 201, under the direction of software 313, from central site
13 processor 203.

14 In a preferred embodiment, the updated information may be housed in a data set
15 at central site processor 203 and updated by the bank of first deposit, affiliated with
16 remote site 197 prior to loading to remote site processor 201. Remote site processor 201,
17 executing software 313, then determines if all of the decisions concerning voiding,
18 endorsing, item numbering, number of deposits, number of checks or dollar sizes of
19 deposits or items can be made by remote site processor 201 by checking the remote
20 processing information as pre-defined in remote site processor 201.

21 If the decisions on endorsing, voiding, item numbering, number of deposits,
22 number or dollar amounts of deposits or monetary items can be made by remote site
23 processor 201, then to ensure proper account processing of check 303, a depositor at
24 terminal 301 is lead through a series of instructions to gather deposit information required

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 to ensure credits are made to the appropriate deposit accounts(s). In one preferred
2 embodiment, the deposit information is read, interpreted and entered automatically by
3 reader/scanner/printer 309. In another embodiment, the deposit information is entered
4 manually on, for example, terminal 301 attached to remote site processor 201.
5 Additionally, during the practice of the invention, scanner/reader/printer 309 encodes
6 check 303 with endorsement and voiding information in order to physically "void" check
7 303, thereby keeping check 303 from being re-transmitted, for example over media 202,
8 or re-deposited at an actual financial institution location for an additional collection. In
9 addition, a unique item identification number may be encoded on check 303 by remote
10 site processor 201 via scanner/reader/printer 309 to aid in tracking data resulting from
11 processing of check 303.

12 The process of the present invention continues when scanner/reader/printer 309
13 performs the functions of scanning check 303 to create electronic check data comprised
14 of image data, informational data including MICR encoding (using either MICR, Optical
15 Character Recognition (OCR) or other like techniques). Scanner/reader/printer 309
16 "voids" check 303 by endorsing check 303 and printing tracking data thereon. The
17 electronic image data and informational data such as MICR information of the voided
18 and endorsed check 303 is transferred over interface 310 to remote site processor 201 for
19 processing which includes image integrity verification. When the image integrity is
20 suspect, the integrity is enhance by either rescanning check 303 or, alternatively, by
21 manual intervention by an operator at terminal 301. If check 303 is rescanned,
22 scanner/reader/printer 309 does not reprint the endorsement, voiding and item numbering
23 information on check 303.
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 Once the electronic image data and the MICR encoding for the first check 303 is
2 determined to be readable and accurate, remote site processor 201 determines if this
3 process should be repeated for additional deposits and/or monetary item(s). When
4 remote site processor 201 determines that processing by scanner/reader/printer 309 of
5 individual check(s), under the direction of remote site processor 201 has ended and that
6 the information is complete and ready for transmission via interface/media 202, remote
7 site processor 201 formats the electronic image data and the MICR encoding and adds
8 any additional control information in preparation for transmission to central site
9 processor 203. The physical check 305 is stored in file 305 at the remote site. In
10 addition, the check image is stored on the remote site processor (*i.e.*, magnetic disk, cd
11 rom, etc. not shown on drawing.) Communications between remote site processor 201
12 and central site processor 203 preferably incorporates digital signature
13 verification/certification performed by process 311 and data encryption performed by
14 process 313 to ensure confidentiality.

15 Figure 4 depicts the central site processor and the various processes and interfaces
16 associated therewith, in accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present
17 invention. While the accuracy of electronic check data transferred from remote site
18 processor 201 to central site processor 203 will generally retain its integrity through the
19 transmission, when electronic check data received by central site processor 203, as
20 evaluated and processed by computer-executable instructions or software loaded therein,
21 is incomplete or inaccurate, or if the image data is not readable, central site processor 203
22 communicates with remote processor 201 giving detailed information to an operator at
23 terminal 301 concerning the need for additional information to restore image information
24 or complete incomplete or inaccurate data. Depending upon the type of missing or

1 otherwise incorrect information, corrected or supplemental information may be supplied
2 by an operator at terminal 301 at remote site 197. It may even be necessary to re-scan
3 check(s) 303 and re-transmit at least portions of the check data including image and/or
4 MICR data to central site processor 203. If check 303 is re-scanned, then endorsement,
5 voiding and item number information are not reprinted on check 303.

6 Once central site processor 203 determines the new check data received for the
7 deposit is accurate and complete, central site processor 203 stores the check image and
8 MICR data of check(s) 303 along with any additional associated information such as time
9 that deposit was captured, who the customer was who captured the deposit, item number,
10 etc. as received from remote site 201. Central site processor 203 confirms receipt of
11 accurate information by sending a notification reply to remote site processor 201 freeing-
12 up remote site processor 201 for further processing of subsequent remote check deposit
13 interactions. In alternate embodiments, central site processor 203 may store image data
14 on an Internet-enabled check image document storage 405 thereby allowing access by the
15 depositor/operator from a terminal such as terminal 301, their designee, or the financial
16 institution of first deposit. It should be pointed out that because of present banking
17 processes, the remote site should still be associated with a chartered financial institution
18 that is authorized to accept the checks from the remote site and process them through
19 normal check clearing paths. The remote site may be a branch extension of the financial
20 institution or may be a person, or other entity with or without a legal relationship to the
21 financial institution that provides the access services to the financial institution. Such an
22 affiliated financial institution is still known as the bank of first deposit. The present
23 embodiment does not propose eliminating the bank of first deposit, only replacing the
24 method used to capture deposits. Central site processor 203 maintains authentication and

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 data integrity at check image document storage 405 through the use of digital signature
2 verification and certification, as well as via data encryption as shown in processes 314
3 and 315.

4 Referring back to Figure 3, in another embodiment, if the decisions of endorsing,
5 voiding, item numbering, number of deposits number or checks or dollar amounts of
6 deposits or monetary items cannot be made by remote site processor 201, for example,
7 when the telecommunications line goes down and the decision information cannot be
8 updated on the remote site processor, or when the central site processor is inoperable, or
9 the specific remote site is not authorized to make these decisions (i.e. we will determine
10 and pass that information to the remote site processor when the remote site processor
11 contacts the central site processor prior to accepting deposit information at the remote
12 site), then remote site processor 201 leads a depositor at for example terminal 301
13 through a series of instructions to gather deposit information required to ensure credits
14 are made to the appropriate deposit accounts(s) 104. This can be done by either using the
15 reader/scanner/printer 309 or by entering the necessary information on the terminal 301
16 attached to remote processor 201.

17 Then, check 303 is placed into the scanner/reader/printer 309 where the item is
18 scanned, the MICR encoding is read preferably using either MICR or Optical Character
19 Recognition (OCR) techniques, and an electronic image is created of check 303. The
20 electronic image data and informational data such as MICR information is transferred
21 from scanner/reader/printer 309 onto remote site processor 201 where remote site
22 processor 201 edits and confirms that the electronic check data is readable. If the
23 electronic check data is not readable or correct, the check data is corrected at the direction
24 of remote site processor 201 by either re-scanning check 303 or having a remote site

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 operator manually key the information in using terminal 301 or other interface device
2 attached to remote site processor 201.

3 Once the check data is determined to be readable and accurate, remote site
4 processor 201 then formats the scanned check data and adds additional control
5 information in preparation for transmission to central site processor 203 and the alternate
6 embodiment approach concludes.

7 Returning to Figure 4, after receipt of valid and accurate check data, if it is
8 determined that the maker bank or maker of the check requires a physical item, the check
9 image is printed in process 401 and then processed through the central site check image
10 capture system 205. If a physical item is not required, the image is sent to the check
11 image capture system 205. In either case, the check image capture system 205 interfaces
12 with the central site 198 deposit systems 103, cash management systems 104, etc. for
13 posting information. The central site then forwards either the printed duplicate check or
14 check image to the maker bank 108. This can be done directly through path 208 if the
15 bank of first deposit's central site 198 has an agreement with maker bank 108 to
16 exchange checks directly, or if the maker bank and the central site bank of first deposit do
17 not have an exchange agreement then through FRBs 106, 107 through path 207.

18 Figure 5 depicts the various component and processes of the maker bank site, in
19 accordance with the preferred embodiments of the present invention.

20 The maker bank 108 receives either images of the original paper items 303 or
21 printed duplicates of the original paper items 303 either directly from the bank of first
22 deposit's central site through path 208 or from the central site Federal Reserve Bank
23 (FRB) 106 clearing process through path 206 (Figure 4), 207, 120.

24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 Central site FRB 106 will process the check images or paper items through their
2 capture system and forward the images or paper items to the maker bank FRB 107
3 through path 207. The maker bank FRB then processes the items or images through their
4 check capture system 504 through path 503 and if necessary, (*i.e.*, when paper duplicate
5 of item has not already been printed by the bank of first deposit), print a duplicate of the
6 original check 303 image if a paper item is required by maker bank 108. A maker bank
7 FRB 107 will then forward the printed items or images to the maker bank 108 via
8 communications or transportation path depicted as path 120. Maker bank 108 will then
9 process the image or paper item through their in-house application systems depicted by
10 deposit system 110, print check image process, 509, check system process, and customer
11 statement process 506 through paths 122, 507, 508, 121, 505, and 507.

12 These in house systems are not to be taken as systems that all banks will have or
13 use for this process. They are meant to represent the in house processing by maker banks
14 to post monetary items to their accounting systems and to send the items (either image or
15 printed duplicate of original items) to the check maker.

16 Figure 6 is an interface diagram depicting a high level description of the
17 interactions between the various components of the present invention, in accordance with
18 a preferred embodiment.

19 In the preferred embodiment, the remote site operator enters deposit information
20 into the remote processor then inserts a draft in a step 601 at the scanner/reader/printer
21 located at the remote site. The scanner/reader/printer reads the item, digitizes and
22 validates the check image information and passes it to the software on the remote site
23 processor in a step 602. The remote site processor software receives the digitized data
24 from the scanner/reader/printer and validates data to ensure that the check information is

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 readable and valid in a step 603. When the image is ready for transmission to the central
2 site. The remote site processor contacts the transmission facility and, incorporating
3 digital signature verification and certification and data encryption software to ensure
4 confidentiality, transmits in a step 604 the item image and control information to the
5 central site. The central site receives the transmitted data and edits and in a step 611
6 verifies the check data for completeness and content.

7 When the central site has determined the check image and other associated data
8 (relating to both the check image and data, and the deposit information) is complete and
9 accurate and meets the deposit and/or item dollar limits, the central site stores the
10 electronic image of the check and any additional associated information received from
11 the remote site, and then confirms in a step 605 receipt of good information by sending to
12 the remote site information needed to endorse the physical check and to void the physical
13 item to keep it from being re-transmitted or deposited at a physical financial institution
14 location for collection. In addition, a unique item identification number can be
15 transmitted to the inventive software on the remote site processor for printing on the
16 physical checks as a tracking and research mechanism. The invention allows for printing
17 of the unique item number if it is determined by the bank employing the present
18 invention that it is desirable to print the unique item number for tracking and research
19 purposes.

20 After the inventive software on the remote processor receives specific information
21 required to void, endorse, and print the unique item number, the remote site processor
22 and the scanner/reader/printer will pass the check again where the remote site will print in
23 a step 606 the information on the physical item at the locations required by the rules
24 governing automated check processing. The item is also scanned in a step 607 again

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 under the direction of the remote site inventive software and the new image (containing
2 endorsement, voiding and item number information), and associated additional
3 information required by the inventive software for tracking and control purposes, is
4 edited in a step 608 for accuracy and completeness and if correct is then transmitted in a
5 step 609 to the central site by the remote site using the transmission facility set up for this
6 purposes.

7 If the data is not readable or correct, the information is corrected at the direction
8 of the remote site by either re-scanning the item or having the remote site operator key
9 the information in using the terminal attached to the remote site processor. If the item is
10 rescanned at this point, the endorsement, voiding and item number information is not
11 reprinted by the scanner/reader/printer. When the image is ready for transmission to the
12 central site, the remote site processor contacts the transmission facility and, incorporating
13 digital signature verification and certification, and data encryption software to ensure
14 confidentiality, transmits in a step 609 the item image and control information to the
15 central site.

16 The central site receives the transmitted updated image data and edits in a step
17 613 for completeness and content. If the data is incomplete or inaccurate, or if the image
18 data is not readable, the central site communicates, with the remote processor and gives
19 detailed information to the operator concerning the need for additional information to
20 complete the inaccurate data or image information. Based on the specific need, this
21 information can be supplied using the terminal on the remote site processor or by re-
22 scanning the physical item and re-transmitting it to the central site. In either case, this
23 information is supplied under the direction of the remote site processor. Such additional
24 information is transmitted to the central site processor from the remote site processor. If

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 the physical item is rescanned at this point, the endorsement, voiding and item number
2 information is not reprinted by the scanner/reader/printer.

3 Once the central site determines the new data received for the deposit is accurate
4 and complete, the central site stores in a step 618 the updated image of the physical item
5 (on the database(s) maintained by the bank of first deposit's central site for this purpose)
6 along with any additional associated information received from the remote site, and then
7 confirms receipt in a step 610 of good information by sending a notification to the remote
8 site that the process for that specific deposit is complete unless more items are present in
9 a step 615 and allows for termination of the transmission of information or for the same
10 process to be followed for other items in a step 614 in that deposit or for another deposit
11 in a step 616.

12 In another embodiment of the invention, the central site stores the check image(s)
13 on an Internet enabled documents storage system allowing access by the depositor, their
14 designee, or the central site processing center of the bank of first deposit. The central site
15 for storing check images and associated information preferably employees incorporating
16 digital signature verification and certification, and data encryption to ensure
17 confidentiality.

18 If the check is removed from the scanner/reader/printer prematurely, at any time
19 during the process of capturing and transmitting data from the remote site, the transaction
20 information associated with that check will be considered invalid and not part of the
21 deposit. The depositor will need to re-scan and re-enter data associated with that check.

22 The remote site operator will have the option at the remote site to release deposit
23 information to the central site for processing. This can be done after either a completion
24

1 of single deposit in step 615 (containing one or more checks) or after completion of all
2 deposits in step 616 (each containing one or more checks) from the remote site.

3 After the deposit(s) from a specific remote site are complete, the central site
4 formats deposit information for processing in the accounting systems of the bank of first
5 deposit's central site in a step 619, including sending the image and other appropriate
6 information for application processing in step 620 (including deposit accounting systems,
7 MICR capture, cash management processing, float processing, etc.,).

8 If an item is an "on us" item, the central site determines that a physical check is
9 required by the maker, that information is relayed to the central site and an identical
10 image or facsimile of the original item can be printed by either the central site processor
11 or by the item capture system in step 619.

12 If the maker bank is a clearing or correspondent bank then the bank of first
13 deposit will determine if the maker bank requires a paper or image item. If the maker
14 bank requires a paper item, then the bank of first deposit's central site will print an exact
15 duplicate of the paper item and route in step 621 the item to the maker bank. The
16 duplicate printed item will generally be as exact as possible based on the quality of the
17 original image. If the maker bank does not require a paper item then the bank of first
18 deposit will route the check image to the maker bank.

19 If the maker bank is not a clearing or correspondent bank, the check data
20 including image will be forwarded in step 621 using the FRB item clearing processes to
21 route the item image to the FRB affiliated with the maker bank. The maker bank FRB
22 determines if the maker bank will accept check data including an image of the item. If
23 the maker bank requires a paper item, the maker bank FRB prints an identical image of
24 the original item with information showing that it is a duplicate and that the bank of first

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 deposit is central site guarantees the item. This duplicated item is then sent in step 621 to
2 the maker bank for the collections of funds.

3 As an alternative, the check image or a printed reproduction of the check can be
4 sent in step 621 to the maker bank from either the bank of first deposit is central site or
5 the maker bank FRB using any other acceptable clearing method or process.

6 Check items that need to be returned, are done so in steps 624 and 625 to the bank
7 of first deposit to be routed back through the same route that was used to clear the item. If
8 a paper item has been created, that item will be returned along with information showing
9 the reason for return. Otherwise, the image will be used for return item purposes until the
10 return item image is returned to the bank of first deposit's central site. At that point, if
11 the remote site processor 201 is able to receive an item image, the image along with the
12 return reason will be passed to the remote site processor 201. If the remote site processor
13 is not capable of receiving check data including an item image, a paper duplicate showing
14 the return reason will be printed either by the central site or by the item capture system
15 under the direction of the central site and sent to the remote site operator 301. The
16 unique item number assigned at capture time by either the central site or the remote site
17 can a be included in all return images and/or returned paper items to enable complete and
18 accurate tracking of all return items

19 Re-deposit may be performed in steps 626, 627, 628 of items facilitated by the
20 remote site prompting the remote site operator with instructions on how to scan and
21 transmit the returned paper item or re-deposit the endorsed image previously captured
22 and stored. The unique item number assigned at capture time by either the central site or
23 the remote site facilitates both options.

24

1 Figure 7 is a detailed flowchart depicting the specific steps for carrying out the
2 invention in accordance with a preferred embodiment.

3 In a step 700, the software is loaded or otherwise made available to the remote
4 site processor for execution. Those skilled in the art appreciate the various processes and
5 steps for performing loading of software into a processor such as the remote site
6 processor. It is also contemplated within the scope of the present invention that the
7 software for execution on any of the processors may take the form of embedded
8 executable instructions.

9 Query step 900 determines if deposit processing criteria, (e.g., deposit limit and
10 endorsement information) are present at the remote site processor thereby enabling the
11 initial check deposit processing decisions to be performed locally at the remote site
12 processor or, alternatively, when the deposit processing criteria is not local on the remote
13 site processor, processing passes through path 906 to step 701.

14 When query step 900 determines that deposit processing criteria is present at the
15 remote site processor, a query step 910 determines if the information required to
16 determine deposit limits and endorse the item is current on the remote site processor. If
17 this information is present and current on the remote site processor, processing passes
18 through path 911 to step 930 where the remote site operator enters deposit information, as
19 well as the endorsement voiding and item numbering information in process step 931
20 prior to reading the first monetary item in process step 932 and then proceeding to query
21 step 933. If this information is not present on the remote site processor or if it is not
22 current, then query step 920 determines if this information can be updated by the
23 operator. If the operator cannot update this information, then process step 926 allows for
24 updating the deposit information from the central site processor and then proceeds to

1 process step 930 where the operator begins the remote capture function by entering
2 deposit information. If the operator can update this information, then process step 921
3 allows for the operator to update the deposit limit and endorsement information and then
4 proceed to process query step 922.

5 Query step 922 determines if the remote site processor can make deposit limit
6 and/or endorsement decisions. If the decision can be made by the remote site processor,
7 then process step 930 allows for the remote operator to enter deposit information, as well
8 as the endorsement voiding and item numbering information in process step 931 prior to
9 reading the first monetary item in process step 932 and then proceeding to query step
10 933.

11 Query step 933 determines if the current item exceeds the item dollar limit or
12 makes the deposit exceed the deposit dollar limit. If the limits are exceed then the
13 process of entering items for the given deposit in process end 934, and the remote site
14 operator has the option of beginning another deposit or ending the deposit process with
15 the central site processor. If the limits are not exceeded, then process step 935 accounts
16 for the scanned item 932 being edited for accuracy and completeness at the remote
17 location prior to proceeding to query step 936 where it is determined if the data from the
18 scanned item is correct.

19 In query step 936, if the data is correct, then query step 937 determines if there are
20 more items to scan. If there are more items to scan, then process step 940 passes back to
21 process step 930 to allow the remote operator to begin the item capture process over
22 again. If query step 937 determines that there are no more items or deposits to process,
23 then process step 941 prepares the item image data or check data for transmission prior to
24 encrypting the data in process step 942 and digitally signing the data in process step 943.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 Process step 944 transmits the data image to the central site processor for editing in
2 process step 747.

3 In query step 936, if the data is not correct, then query step 938 determines if the
4 operator can correct the data using a data terminal connected to the remote site processor.
5 If the operator can correct the data, it is done in process step 946 prior to passing through
6 process step 947 and going back to query step 936 to test data image for correctness. In
7 query step 938, if the scanned item image is not correct, process step 948 passes through
8 to process 932 where the item is rescanned.

9 Stepping back to query step 922, if endorsement and deposit limit information
10 cannot be made by the remote site processor, then the remote site operator enters deposit
11 information in process step 701 before scanning the physical monetary item in process
12 step 702 after which the item image is edited in process step 703.

13 In query step 704, if the image data is not correct, the check is returned to process
14 step 702 where it is rescanned and re-edited in step 703. If query step 704 determines the
15 image data is correct, then the data is passed successfully through process step 710 where
16 the image is prepared for transmission to process step 711 where the date is encrypted
17 and step 712 where the digital signature is added in preparation for transmitting the data
18 to the central site in process step 713.

19 Process step 714 receives the transmitted image data and passes it to query step
20 715 where it is edited for accuracy and completeness. If the data is not accurate or
21 complete, it is passed to process step 720 where the data is corrected by requesting
22 updated information from the remote site processor. If the remote site operator cannot
23 supply correct date via the terminal attached to the remote site processor in query step
24 721, then the check passes through process step 725 to process step 702 where it is

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 scanned again in preparation for editing and transmitting the corrected image to the
2 central site processor. If the remote site operator is able and authorized to correct the
3 data in query step 721, the data is entered in process step 722 and passed through path
4 723 to process step 711 where the data is encrypted in preparation for transmitting to the
5 central site processor.

6 If in query step 715 the check image data is complete and accurate, the data is
7 passed to process step 730 where the image is stored in data sets used by the bank for
8 document archival and research as well as in a database that is Internet enabled and
9 available for access and research purposes by the depositing customer and bank of first
10 deposit. After the image is stored, a confirmation of good data receipt is created in
11 process step 731. This confirmation contains necessary endorsement, item numbering
12 and voiding information, which is added to the confirmation record in process steps 732
13 and 733 prior to the confirmation being sent to the remote site processor. The
14 confirmation record is then data encrypted in process step 734 and a digital signature is
15 added in process step 735 prior to the record being transmitted to the remote processor in
16 process step 736. Upon receipt by the remote processor in process step 737, the
17 endorsement, item numbering and voiding information is printed on the physical check in
18 process step 738 prior to it being re-scanned in process step 739.

19 After a new check image is created showing the necessary endorsement and
20 voiding information in process step 740, the new check image is edited to ensure the
21 scanned check data is correct. If in query step 742, it is determined that the image data is
22 not complete or accurate, the image is passed through process step 750 to process step
23 739 where the physical check is scanned again. If the check is passed through the reader
24 again at this point, the endorsement information has already been printed and will not be

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 printed again. If in query step 742 it is determined that the check image data is good, the
2 data is prepared for transmission in process step 743 prior to the data being encrypted in
3 process step 743 and digitally signed in process step 745 prior to being transmitted to the
4 central site in process step 746.

5 As the central site receives the transmitted image data in process step 747, the
6 image is edited by the central site software in process step 748 to ensure completeness
7 and accuracy of data. Query step 756 determines quality of data and if the data is not
8 complete or accurate, it is sent to query step 791 where it is determined if the deposit
9 limit and or endorsement information is available on the remote site processor. If this
10 information is available on the remote site processor then the central site processor
11 communicates with the remote site processor through path 794 to determine if the remote
12 site operator can supply the correct image data in query step 938. The process involved
13 in query step 938 was discussed above. If query step 791 determines that the deposit
14 limit and endorsement information is not on the remote processor then query step 795
15 determines if the remote operator can supply the correct image information. If the
16 operator can supply the correct image information, it is entered in process step 796 and
17 the check image is prepared for transmission in process step 797 and passed to process
18 step 744 (previously discussed) for digital signature and transmission. If in query step
19 795 the operator cannot correct/update the image information, the check is processed
20 through path 798 to process step 739 (previously discussed) where it is scanned again in
21 preparation for transmitting to central site processor.

22 Stepping back to query step 756, if the data image is complete and accurate the
23 endorsed image of the check is stored in process step 760 in datasets used by the bank for
24 document archival and research as well as in a database in process step 762 that is

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 Internet enabled and available for the depositing customer and bank of first deposit to be
2 able to access for research purposes.

3 The central processor site then sends confirmation of good receipt of data in
4 process step 762 to the remote processor in process step 763. At this point query step 764
5 at the remote processor determines if the deposit currently being worked on is complete.
6 If the deposit is not complete, then process step 780 returns control to the previously
7 discussed process step 702 where the next item is scanned. If the deposit is complete
8 query step 764 asks the operator in query step 765 if there is another deposit. If there is
9 another deposit to be processed, process step 766 passes through to previously discussed
10 process step 701 where the new deposit process is initiated. If there is not another
11 deposit as determined in query step 765, the remote entry process is completed and the
12 captured deposit and image information is entered into application processing for the
13 bank of first deposit's central site item capture system in process step 771, the deposit
14 systems in process step 772 and the cash management systems in process step 773.

15 In the course of processing a deposit, it is integral to the decision making to
16 understand which banks the deposited items are drawn (i.e. who is the maker bank).
17 Query step 774 determines if the monetary items in the deposit are "on us" items (i.e.
18 items drawn on the bank of first deposit). If the items are "on us," the system determines,
19 in query step 850, if the check maker requires a paper check. If they do, then a
20 duplicate of the original check is printed in process step 851 and the paper item is sent to
21 the maker of the check. In addition, the image of the item is sent to process step 860
22 (discussed below) for processing on internal computer accounting systems. In query step
23 850, if the maker of the check does not require a paper duplicate of the original item,
24 process step 860 passes the checks image through the internal accounting systems to

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 query step 861 where it is determined if the item is payable (*i.e.*, does the check maker
2 have sufficient funds in their account to cover the check, is the maker account still open,
3 etc.).

4 If query step 861 determines the item is payable, the check data is posted to the
5 maker's account and the process ends for that check item in step 863. If query step 861
6 determines the item is not payable, then process step 870 returns either the printed
7 duplicate of the check or the check image to the original depositor at the remote location.
8 In query step 871, a remote site operator determines if they want to re-deposit the item or
9 return it. If they decide to return the item, this is done in process step 880 and path 881
10 sends control to previously discussed process end step 863. If query step 871 determines
11 that the item should be re-deposited for collection, query step 872 determines if this is to
12 be done using the duplicate paper item or the original check image.

13 If the return from query step 872 is to be done using the duplicate paper item, then
14 this is done in path 873 where control is sent back to previously discussed process step
15 764 where the item is deposited using the scanner/reader/printer. If the check return from
16 query step 872 is to be done using the original captured check image for the item, process
17 step 875 allows for the remote operator to initiate this process in a step 875 by entering
18 the unique number assigned to the original check at capture time. This information is
19 sent to the central site processor via process step 876 and control is then passed through
20 path 877 to process step 764 where the item is deposited using the check original check
21 image.

22 Stepping back to query step 774 where it is determined if the item is an on us
23 item, if query step 774 determines that the item is not an "on us" item then query step
24 800 determines if the maker bank is a clearing bank or a correspondent bank. If the

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 maker bank is a clearing bank or a correspondent bank, then query step 801 determines if
2 the maker bank requires a paper copy of the original check item. If they require a paper
3 duplicate, then a paper duplicate of the original item is printed in process step 802 and
4 sent to the maker bank in path 803 which passes control to process step 805 discussed
5 below. If query step 801 determines that the maker bank does not require a printed
6 duplicate check, the image of the original item drawn on the maker bank is sent to the
7 maker bank in process step 805 and the maker bank sends the item through path 806 to
8 previously discussed process step 861 to determine if the item is payable at the maker
9 bank.

10 Stepping back to query step 800, if the payee bank is not a clearing bank or
11 correspondent bank, process step 810 sends the check image to the Federal Reserve Bank
12 (FRB) serving as the clearing entity for the bank of first deposit. That branch of the
13 Federal Reserve Bank forwards the check image to the Federal Reserve Bank serving as
14 the clearing agent for the maker bank. That Federal Reserve Bank determines in query
15 step 811 if the maker bank requires a paper duplicate of the original paper check. If the
16 maker bank requires a paper item, the FRB prints the paper item in process step 812,
17 incorporates the duplicate check in their processing systems as depicted in process step
18 813 where the item is sent in path 814 to process step 815 where the maker bank receives
19 the paper item. If in query step 811 the maker bank does not require a paper check, the
20 FRB sends the image to the maker bank that receives the image in process step 815, and
21 passes, via path 816, either the check image or printed duplicate of the original check to
22 previously discussed query step 861 to determine if the item is payable by the maker.

23 The present invention may be embodied in other forms without departing from its
24 spirit or essential characteristics. As properly understood, the preceding description of

1 specific embodiments is illustrative only and in no way restrictive. The scope of the
2 invention is, therefore, indicated solely by the appended claims as follows.

3 What is claimed and desired to be secured by United States Letters Patent is:
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 1. A method for processing a check deposited at a remote location, said remote
2 locations including financial institutions and other locations capable of interfacing with
3 said financial institutions, said method comprising the steps of:

- 4 a) converting said check into electronic check data;
5 b) electronically exchanging said check data with said financial
6 institution; and
7 c) said financial institution crediting an account according to said check
8 data.

9
10 2. The method as recited in claim 1, wherein converting step comprises the steps
11 of:

- 12 a) scanning said check to create image data, said image data representing
13 an electronic image of said check; and
14 b) reading said image data to create informational data from said image
15 data to aid in electronic processing of said deposited check.

16
17 3. The method as recited in claim 2, wherein said converting step further
18 comprises the step of:

- 19 a) reading at least a portion of said check to determine additional
20 informational data stored in a Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) line.
21
22
23
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 4. The method as recited in claim 1, wherein said electronically exchanging said
2 check data step comprises the step of:

3 a) sending said check data from said non-financial institution location to
4 said financial institution over an electronic channel;

5 b) said financial institution verifying said check data with account
6 records accessible by said financial institution;

7 c) when said check data conforms to said account records, said financial
8 institution confirming said check data to said remote location; and

9 d) said non-financial institution location processing said check data into
10 processed check data in response to said confirming step.

11
12 5. The method as recited in claim 4, wherein said financial institution confirming
13 said check data step comprises the steps of:

14 a) said financial institution acknowledging to said remote location receipt
15 and accuracy of said check data; and

16 b) said financial institution sending endorsement and voiding information
17 to said remote location.

1 6. The method as recited in claim 5, wherein said remote location processing
2 said check data into processed check data step comprises the steps of:

- 3 a) endorsing said check using said endorsement information; and
4 b) voiding said check using said voiding information, said endorsing and
5 voiding steps creating a processed check.

6
7 7. The method as recited in claim 6, wherein said endorsing and voiding steps
8 are further comprised of the step of:

- 9 a) printing on said endorsement and voiding information on said check.

10
11 8. The method as recited in claim 4, further comprising the step of:

- 12 a) following said processing said check data into processed check data
13 step, said remote location secondly converting said processed check data into
14 electronic processed check data.

15
16 9. The method as recited in claim 8, wherein said secondly converting step
17 comprises the steps of:

- 18 a) scanning said processed check to create image data, said image data
19 representing an electronic image of said processed check; and
20 b) reading said image data to create informational data from said image
21 data to aid in electronic processing of said depositing of said check.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 10. The method as recited in claim 9, further comprising the steps of:

2 a) secondly electronically exchanging said processed check data with
3 said financial institution.

4
5 11. The method as recited in claim 10, wherein said secondly electronically
6 exchanging said check data step comprises the step of:

7 a) sending said processed check data from said remote location to said
8 financial institution over an electronic channel;

9 b) said financial institution verifying said processed check data with
10 account records accessible by said financial institution; and

11 c) when said processed check data conforms to said account records, said
12 financial institution secondly confirming said processed check data to said remote
13 location.

14
15 12. The method as recite in claim 4, wherein said crediting said account according
16 to said check data step further comprises the step of:

17 a) when said financial institution is not the maker bank of said check,
18 sending said processed check data to said maker bank for clearing said check.

1 13. The method as recited in claim 12, wherein said sending said processed check
2 data to said maker bank for clearing said check step comprises the steps of:

3 a) when said maker bank is electronic exchange-capable, electronically
4 exchanging said processed check data with said maker bank; and

5 b) when said maker bank is not electronic exchange-capable, printing a
6 facsimile of said check from said processed check data; and forwarding said
7 facsimile of said check to said maker bank.
8
9

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 14. A computer-readable medium having computer-executable instructions for
2 performing a method for processing a check deposited at a location remote from a
3 financial institution, said computer-executable instructions for performing the steps of:

4 a) converting said check into electronic check data;

5 b) electronically exchanging said check data with said financial
6 institution; and

7 c) said financial institution crediting an account according to said check
8 data.

9
10 15. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
11 recited in claim 14, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
12 step of converting comprises computer-executable instructions for performing the steps
13 of:

14 a) scanning said check to create image data, said image data representing
15 an electronic image of said check; and

16 b) reading said image data to create informational data from said image
17 data to aid in electronic processing of said depositing of said check.

18
19 16. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
20 recited in claim 15, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
21 step of converting further comprises computer-executable instructions for performing the
22 step of:

23 a) reading at least a portion of said check to determine additional
24 informational data stored in a Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) line.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 17. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
2 recited in claim 14, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing said
3 electronically exchanging said check data step comprises computer-executable
4 instructions for performing the step of:

5 a) sending said check data from said non-financial institution location to
6 said financial institution over an electronic channel;

7 b) said financial institution verifying said check data with account
8 records accessible by said financial institution;

9 c) when said check data conforms to said account records, said financial
10 institution confirming said check data to said non-financial institution location;
11 and

12 d) said non-financial institution location processing said check data into
13 processed check data in response to said confirming step.

14
15 18. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
16 recited in claim 17, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
17 step of said financial institution confirming said check data step comprises computer-
18 executable instructions for performing the steps of:

19 a) said financial institution acknowledging to said non-financial
20 institution location receipt and accuracy of said check data; and

21 b) said financial institution sending endorsement and voiding
22 information to said non-financial institution location.
23
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 19. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
2 recited in claim 18, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
3 step of said non-financial institution location processing said check data into processed
4 check data step comprises computer-executable instructions for performing the steps of:

- 5 a) endorsing said check using said endorsement information; and
6 b) voiding said check using said voiding information, said endorsing and
7 voiding steps creating a processed check.
8

9 20. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
10 recited in claim 18, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
11 steps of endorsing and voiding are further comprised of computer-executable instructions
12 for performing the step of:

- 13 a) printing on said endorsement and voiding information on said check.
14

15 21. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
16 recited in claim 17, wherein said computer-readable medium further comprise computer-
17 executable instructions for performing the step of:

- 18 a) following said processing said check data into processed check data
19 step, said non-financial institution location secondly converting said processed
20 check data into electronic processed check data.
21
22
23
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 22. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
2 recited in claim 21, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
3 step of secondly converting comprises computer-executable instructions for performing
4 the steps of:

5 a) scanning said processed check to create image data, said image data
6 representing an electronic image of said processed check; and

7 b) reading said image data to create informational data from said image
8 data to aid in electronic processing of said depositing of said check.

9
10 23. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
11 recited in claim 22, wherein said computer-readable medium further comprise computer-
12 executable instructions for performing the steps of:

13 a) secondly electronically exchanging said processed check data with
14 said financial institution.

1 24. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
2 recited in claim 23, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
3 step of secondly electronically exchanging said check data comprises computer-
4 executable instructions for performing the steps of:

5 a) sending said processed check data from said non-financial institution
6 location to said financial institution over an electronic channel;

7 b) said financial institution verifying said processed check data with
8 account records accessible by said financial institution; and

9 c) when said processed check data conforms to said account records, said
10 financial institution secondly confirming said processed check data to said non-
11 financial institution location.

12
13 25. The computer-readable medium having computer executable instructions, as
14 recited in claim 17, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
15 step of crediting said account according to said check data step further comprises
16 computer-executable instructions for performing the step of:

17 a) when said financial institution is not the maker bank of said check,
18 sending said processed check data to said maker bank for clearing said check.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 26. The computer-readable medium having computer-executable instructions, as
2 recited in claim 25, wherein said computer-executable instructions for performing the
3 step of sending said processed check data to said maker bank for clearing said check
4 comprises computer-executable instructions for performing the steps of:

5 a) when said maker bank is electronic exchange-capable, electronically
6 exchanging said processed check data with said maker bank; and when said maker
7 bank is not electronic exchange-capable, printing a facsimile of said check from
8 said processed check data; and forwarding said facsimile of said check to said
9 maker bank.

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 27. A system for processing a deposit of a check, said system comprising:

2 a) a remote site for converting said check into electronic check data;

3 b) a central site electronically accessible to said remote site, said central
4 site capable of electronically exchanging said check data with financial
5 institution; and

6 c) a maker site capable of electronically interfacing with said central site
7 to obtain said check data and to credit an account according to said check data
8 without having to physically receive the check at said financial institution.

9
10 28. The system for processing a deposit of a check, as recited in claim 27, wherein
11 said remote site further comprises:

12 a) a scanner/reader/printer to receive said check for processing; and

13 b) a remote processor electronically and operably coupled to said
14 scanner/reader/printer, said remote processor further comprising computer-
15 executable instructions for interacting with said scanner/reader/printer, said
16 computer-executable instructions in conjunction with said scanner/reader/printer
17 for performing the steps of:

18 i) scanning said check to create image data, said image data
19 representing an electronic image of said check;

20 ii) reading said image data to create informational data from
21 said image data to aid in electronic processing of said depositing of said
22 check; and

23 iii) sending said check data from said remote site to said
24 central site over an electronic channel.

1 29. The system for processing a deposit of a check, as recited in claim 27, wherein
2 said central site further comprises:

3 a) central site processor further comprising computer-executable
4 instructions for performing the steps of:

5 b) verifying said check data with account records accessible by said
6 central site; and

7 c) when said check data conforms to said account records, said central
8 site confirming said check data to remote site including sending endorsement and
9 voiding information to said remote site.

10
11 30. The system for processing a deposit of a check, as recited in claim 29, wherein
12 said remote site further comprises computer-executable instructions for:

13 a) in response to said central site confirming step, processing said check
14 data into processed check data including

15 b) endorsing said check using said endorsement information;

16 c) voiding said check using said voiding information, said endorsing and
17 voiding steps creating a processed check; and

18 d) secondly converting said processed check into electronic processed
19 check data by scanning said processed check to create image data, said image data
20 representing an electronic image of said processed check and reading said image
21 data to create information al data from said image data to aid in electronic
22 processing of said depositing of said check.

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

1 31. The system for processing a deposit of a check as recited in claim 27, wherein
2 said account is credited according to said check data without having to receive the
3 physical check at the maker site.
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

1 32. A method for processing a check deposited at a financial institution, said
2 method comprising the steps of:

3 a) converting said check into electronic check data;

4 b) electronically exchanging said check data with said financial
5 institution; and

6 c) said financial institution crediting an account according to said check
7 data.

8 *add*
as

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

ABSTRACT OF THE INVENTION

A system that includes computer hardware, computer software, apparatus, and methodology that enables individuals, businesses, and all types of organizations (both for profit and non-profit) to capture and securely transmit check images (including, but not limited to, personal checks, business checks, travelers checks, money orders, merchant coupons, food coupons, line of credit checks, etc.), deposit information, and other information from remote locations (i.e., locations that could include the financial institution's remote locations, other financial institution's locations, businesses, private residences, etc.), for the purpose of having those checks credited to the depositing individual's or organization's bank account(s) and having the check images (and/or physical checks) entered into the bank check clearing channels for ultimate delivery to the maker bank for payment out of the maker's account.

G:\DATA\PAT\WORDPAT\7905_15.doc

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
A PROFESSIONAL CORPORATION
ATTORNEYS AT LAW
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE

We hereby appoint as our attorneys and/or patent agents: RICK D. NYDEGGER, Registration No. 28,651; DAVID O. SEELEY, Registration No. 30,148; JONATHAN W. RICHARDS, Registration No. 29,843; JOHN C. STRINGHAM, Registration No. 40,831; BRADLEY K. DeSANDRO, Registration No. 34,521; JOHN M. GUYNN, Registration No. 36,153; CHARLES L. ROBERTS, Registration No. 32,434; GREGORY M. TAYLOR, Registration No. 34,263; DANA L. TANGREN, Registration No. 37,246; KEVIN B. LAURENCE, Registration No. 38,219; ERIC L. MASCHOFF, Registration No. 36,596; C. J. VEVERKA, Registration No. 40,858; ROBYN L. PHILLIPS, Registration No. 39,330; RICHARD C. GILMORE, Registration No. 37,335; DAVID B. DELLENBACH, Registration No. 39,166; KEVIN K. JOHANSON, Registration No. 38,506; DAVID L. GRIFFIN, Registration No. 44,136; R. BURNS ISRAELSEN, Registration No. 42,685; DAVID R. TODD, Registration No. 41,348; FRASER D. ROY, Registration No. 45,666; CARL T. REED, Registration No. 45,454; JESÚS JUANÓS i TIMONEDA, Registration No. 43,332; STEPHEN D. PRODNUK, Registration No. 43,020; R. PARRISH FREEMAN, JR., Registration No. 42,556; PETER F. MALEN, JR., Registration No. 45,576; ADRIAN J. LEE, Registration No. 42,785; KYLE H. FLINDT, Registration No. 42,539; and ERIC M. KAMERATH, Registration No. 46,081, with full power of substitution and revocation, to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith.

2

Kevin K. Johanson
WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
1000 Eagle Gate Tower
60 East South Temple
Salt Lake City, Utah 84111
Telephone: (801) 533-9800
Facsimile: (801) 328-1707

Wherefore, we pray that Letters Patent be granted to us for the invention or discovery described and claimed in the foregoing specification and claims, declaration, power of attorney, and this petition.

DATED this 28TH day of March, 2000.

Inventor: 

DANNE L. BUCHANAN
3362 East Oak Hollow Circle
Sandy, Utah 84093

DATED this 28TH day of April, 2000.

Inventor: 

WILLIAM RONALD TITUS
345 North Coventry Circle
Fruit Heights, Utah 84037

PATENT APPLICATION SERIAL NO. _____

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
FEE RECORD SHEET

05/10/2000 AWAYES 00000006 09560779

01 FC:101	690.00 DP
02 FC:103	216.00 DP
03 FC:102	78.00 DP

PTO-1556
(5/87)

*U.S. GPO: 1999-459-082/19144

581-410

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD
Effective December 29, 1999

Application or Docket Number
09/500779

CLAIMS AS FILED - PART I

	(Column 1)	(Column 2)	
FOR	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA	
BASIC FEE			
TOTAL CLAIMS	<i>32</i> minus 20 =	* <i>12</i>	
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS	<i>4</i> minus 3 =	* <i>1</i>	
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT			

* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2

CLAIMS AS AMENDED - PART II

	(Column 1)	(Column 2)	(Column 3)			
AMENDMENT A	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA		
Total	* <i>118</i>	Minus	** <i>32</i>	=	<i>86</i>	
Independent	* <i>13</i>	Minus	*** <i>4</i>	=	<i>9</i>	
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM						

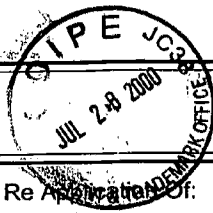


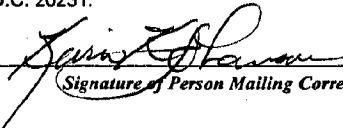
	(Column 1)	(Column 2)	(Column 3)			
AMENDMENT B	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA		
Total	* <i>133</i>	Minus	** <i>118</i>	=	<i>15</i>	
Independent	* <i>13</i>	Minus	*** <i>13</i>	=		
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM						

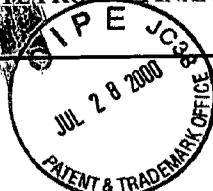
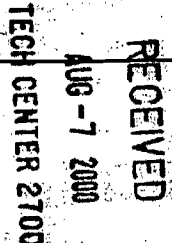
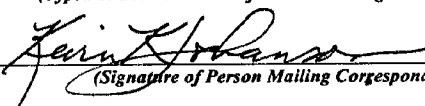
	(Column 1)	(Column 2)	(Column 3)			
AMENDMENT C	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	PRESENT EXTRA		
Total	* <i>139</i>	Minus	** <i>133</i>	=	<i>6</i>	
Independent	* <i>13</i>	Minus	*** <i>13</i>	=		
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM						

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
 ** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20."
 *** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3."
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

FORM PTO-875
(Rev. 12/99)Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
U.S. GPO: 2000-463-433/29044

GAU - \$2761

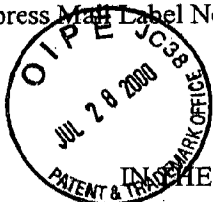
		TRANSMITTAL LETTER (General - Patent Pending)		Docket No. 7905.15	
In Re Application of: Buchanan et al.					
Serial No. 09/560,779		Filing Date April 28, 2000		Examiner Not Yet Assigned	
Group Art Unit					
Title: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION					
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>TO THE COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS:</u></p> <p>Transmitted herewith is:</p> <p>Petition to Make Special Under 37 C.F.R. Section 102(d) Transmittal Letter Certificate of Mailing by "Express Mail" Label No. EL550340601US Copies of sixteen (16) references Check No. 116836 in the amount of \$130</p> <p>in the above identified application.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> No additional fee is required.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A check in the amount of \$130.00 is attached.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge and credit Deposit Account No. 23-3178 as described below. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Charge the amount of</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Credit any overpayment.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Charge any additional fee required.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">  Signature </p> <p>Dated: July 28, 2000</p> <p>Kevin K. Johanson Registration No. 38,506</p> <p> 022913</p> <p>PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE</p> <p>CC:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>I certify that this document and fee is being deposited on <u>July 28, 2000</u> with the U.S. Postal Service as first class mail under 37 C.F.R. 1.8 and is addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231.</p> <p> Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence</p> <p><u>Kevin K. Johanson</u> Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Correspondence</p> </div>					

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY "EXPRESS MAIL" (37 CFR 1.10)			Docket No. 7905.15
Applicant(s): Buchanan et al.			
Serial No. 09/560,779	Filing Date April 28, 2000	Examiner Not Yet Assigned	Group Art Unit Not Yet Assigned
Invention: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION			
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="width: 30%;">  </div> <div style="width: 65%; text-align: right;">  </div> </div> <p>I hereby certify that this <u>Petition to Make Special (including the items listed below)</u> (Identify type of correspondence)</p> <p>is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 in an envelope addressed to: The Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231-0001 on <u>July 28, 2000</u> (Date)</p> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 20px;"> <u>Kevin K. Johanson</u> (Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Correspondence)  (Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence) <u>EL550340601US</u> (Express Mail Mailing Label Number) </div>			
<p style="text-align: center;">Note: Each paper must have its own certificate of mailing.</p> <p>Transmitted: Petition to Make Special Under 37 C.F.R. § 102(d) (20 pgs.) Transmittal Letter in triplicate (1 pg.s) Check No. <u>116836</u> in the amount of \$130.00 for filing fee of Petition Form PTO-1449 Copies of sixteen (16) prior references Certificate of Mailing by Express Mail Label No. EL550340601US Postcard</p>			

Express Mail Label No. EL550340601US

PATENT APPLICATION

Docket No: 7905.15



IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re application of:

Buchanan et al.

Title:

METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING
FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS
PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL
INSTITUTION

Serial No:

09/560,779

Filed:

April 28, 2000

RECEIVED
AUG - 7 2000
TECH CENTER 2700
Art Unit

PETITION TO MAKE SPECIAL UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 102 (d)

Honorable Commissioner of
Patents and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicants hereby respectfully requests that examination of the above-referenced patent application be advanced out of turn and requests that the prosecution thereof be performed in an expedited manner. In conformance with 37 C.F.R. § 102 (d), Applicants submit this written petition accompanied by the filing fee set forth in 37 C.F.R. § 1.17 (i) (2).

Should a restriction requirement be thought necessary, Applicants request that prompt telephonic notice be given to Kevin K. Johanson at the following telephone number at which time Applicants will make an election without traverse ((801) 533-9800).

08/03/2000 CNGUYEN 00000058 09560779

01 FC:122

130.00-OP

Void date: 08/03/2000 CNGUYEN

08/08/2000 CNGUYEN 00000058 09560790 OP

08/03/2000 CNGUYEN 00000050 09560779 130.00 OP
01 FC:122

Applicants have caused to be made two careful and thorough pre-examination searches of the prior art. One search was performed by Roger Flagg, a professional searcher with Express Search. Examiners MacDonald and Tkacs, in Art Unit 2761 were consulted regarding the field of search. Mr. Flagg searched Class 705, subclasses 35, 39 and 42; Class 235, subclass 379. The other search was performed by Applicants.

The following references were discovered in the above-referenced pre-examination search and will be discussed in detail below:

- U.S. Patent No. 6,032,137 (Ballard)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,999,624 (Hopkins)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,930,778 (Geer)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,895,455 (Bellinger et al.)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,832,463 (Funk)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,787,403 (Randle)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,691,524 (Josephson)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,583,759 (Geer)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,412,190 (Josephson et al.)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,373,550 (Campbell et al.)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,326,959 (Perazza)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,321,816 (Rogan et al.)
- U.S. Patent No. 5,237,159 (Stephens et al.)
- U.S. Patent No. 4,358,671 (Case)
- U.S. Patent No. 4,321,672 (Braun et al.)
- U.S. Patent No. 4,264,808 (Owens et al.)

DETAILED DISCUSSION OF THE REFERENCES AS SPECIFIED
IN 37 C.F.R. § 1.111 (b) AND (c)

I. NATURE OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

A system that includes computer hardware, computer software, apparatus, and methodology that enables individuals, businesses, and all types of organizations (both for profit and non-profit) to capture and securely transmit check images (including, but not limited to, personal checks, business checks, travelers checks, money orders, merchant coupons, food coupons, line of credit checks, etc.), deposit information, and other information from remote locations (i.e., locations that could include the financial institution's remote locations, other financial institution's locations, businesses, private residences, etc.), for the purpose of having those checks credited to the depositing individual's or organization's bank account(s) and having the check images (and/or physical checks) entered into the bank check clearing channels for ultimate delivery to the maker bank for payment out of the maker's account.

II. DESCRIPTION OF REFERENCES FOUND IN PRE-EXAMINATION SEARCH

A. Ballard Patent

United States Patent No. 6,032,137, REMOTE IMAGE CAPTURE WITH CENTRALIZED PROCESSING AND STORAGE, issued on February 29, 2000 to Claudio R. Ballard. The referenced patent is intended for the automated storage and retrieval of all kinds of remotely captured transaction data from a variety of sources including credit card transactions, smart card transactions, automated teller machine (ATM) transactions, consumer purchases, business forms, W2 forms, birth certificates, deeds and insurance documents.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process involves storage and retrieval of data and images captured from at the remote check capture locations. However, the storage and retrieval of data is a by-product of the invention and will use commonly accepted commercially available storage and retrieval hardware and software.

B. Hopkins Patent

United States Patent No. 5,999,624, REMOTE FINANCIAL TRANSACTION SYSTEM, issued on December 7, 1999 to W. Dale Hopkins. The reference allows for remote payments of financial obligations using a payment module over communications link and incorporating password security. The reference uses credit card magnetic stripe information to identify what accounts the payments should be transferred from.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location), which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process involves the transmission of information and check images associated with a particular deposit and/or depositor. The invention has no purpose or design associated with transmitting data from remote locations for the purpose of payment of financial obligations.

C. Geer Patent

United States Patent No. 5,930,778, SYSTEM FOR EXPEDITING THE CLEARING OF FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS AND COORDINATING THE SAME WITH INVOICE PROCESSING AT THE POINT OF RECEIPT, issue on July 27, 1999 to Terry L. Geer. This reference includes the capture of financial information at locations created for lock box processing. The lock box process allows for checks or other financial instruments to be captured along with a payment coupon as part of the payment process. The check images are captured as well as the MICR line. The checks can either be sent to a central site for capture and presentment through the normal check clearing paths or the MICR line information is captured at the lock box site and sent to the central site for further electronic sorting and processing both with regard to the introduction of the checks into the payment system and the crediting of funds represented by the checks to the payee's account at the bank. When the image is captured it is retained for research purposes. Once at the central site the checks or electronic totals are credited to the account of the sender and the check information is forwarded through the electronic channels.

The current patentable process differs in that it contains nothing related to payment processing. The process is designed to capture images and MICR line information of the checks that are going to be credited to the payee's account and processed as an image through the check clearing channels. Once the check is captured it is voided and can be retained, destroyed by the depositor, or returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed.

The primary differences are that the inventive process is not a lock box process, and the process to be patented is based on using check images for the clearing process as compared to bank information from the checks as in the referenced patent. In addition, the patent is designed to

scrutinize the check data at the remote site as it is being captured through an interactive process with a central site to ensure the data and depositor information is complete and correct. Any check not passing this scrutiny may either be rejected for manual processing, or the data may be changed with interactive direction from the central site, and the image is processed. The checks are also endorsed and voided (to keep them from being re-deposited) at the direction of the central computers or check processing personnel. At this point the physical check can either be filed, returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed by the depositor.

D. Bellinger et al. Patent

United States Patent No. 5,895,455, DOCUMENT IMAGE DISPLAY SYSTEM AND METHOD, issued on April 20, 1999 to David T. Bellinger et al. The reference is a method for providing user access to a selected group of document images of all kinds including check images. The traditional high-speed image capture is used to acquire and store the image of the checks. Once the image is created additional reference data is added to it (by the reference patent) and it is stored for retrieval (CD, print, and on-line viewing, etc.). This system is first and foremost an image storage, retrieval and view system with the traditional check processing and collection methodology continuing and “feeding” this system to enable it to store and retrieve images for later reference. This system does not deal with check depositing, rather it is the beneficiary of traditional check depositing and processing.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking,

savings, etc.), creating an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment.

E. **Funk Patent**

United States Patent No. 5,832,463, AUTOMATED SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR CHECKLESS CHECK TRANSACTION, issued on November 3, 1998 to Wade L. Funk. The reference deals with capturing check image and other information associated with a point of sale transaction. The focus of point of sale transactions is to transfer funds out of the accounts of the purchaser(s) for the purpose of paying for a monetary transaction at a place of business. This allows for a check-less transaction for payment of monetary obligations. Images of checks are not used for creating the information required to transfer money out of the purchaser's account, the check image created is used for research purposes only. The MICR line information is used by the vendor to create the information required to transfer funds out of the check maker's account into the vendor's account in payment of the financial obligation.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. While the reference deals with check information to transfer funds out of the purchasers account to pay for a monetary transaction, the invention deals with depositing funds into a depositor's account from check(s) given to them as settlement of an obligation, and to present the deposited checks through the check collections processes and systems to transfer funds from the accounts of the check makers

into the account of the depositor. The invention does not have any reference or purpose of transferring funds out of accounts for settling monetary transactions.

F. **Randle Patent**

United States Patent No. 5,787,403, BANK-CENTRIC SERVICE PLATFORM, NETWORK AND SYSTEM, issued on July 28, 1998 to William M. Randle. This invention relates to a bank-centric network identifying a bank as a central service provider to a customer and is designed to provide user access, presentation and gateway functions that permit a customer to communicate with product providers through a financial institution. The network is customer-accessed and associated with a conventional bank or financial institution and provides conventional information, products and services offered by a bank and is a gateway to other “non-bank” information.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process involves storage and retrieval of data and images captured from at the remote check capture locations. However, the storage and retrieval of data is a by-product of the invention and will use commonly accepted commercially available storage and retrieval hardware and software. The information created and stored by the invention would be the type of information that the reference could make available through its processes. However, the invention will have the ability to store and make available information also using conventional storage and retrieval hardware and software.

The exact presentation of the retrieved data will be directed by the inventive software to meet the needs of the institution owning the software.

G. Josephson Patent

United States Patent No. 5,691,524, ELECTRONIC CHECK PRESENTMENT SYSTEM HAVING A NON-ECP EXCEPTIONS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM INCORPORATED THEREIN, issued on November 25, 1997 to Stanley M. Josephson. The reference deals with transmitting check MICR information after the capture of said information using the normally accepted methods of capturing check information. The transmitted MICR uses an improved Electronic Check Presentment (ECP) system and the information is used by the recipient financial institution to determine if the check is payable out of the makers account. If the check is not payable information is sent to the capturing institution to not send the paper check. The check is instead returned to the depositor for return to the maker or redeposit. This process does not deal with in any way with the remote deposit of checks. It also does not eliminate the processing of checks using paper checks from the point of first capture, etc. Is specifically used to pre-notify the maker bank of checks being processed for them by the bank of first deposit so that the maker bank can determine if the checks are all going to be payable at their bank. If they are not going to be payable, the bank of first deposit will return the check to the payee instead of routing the check to the maker bank and receiving it back from the maker bank when it is determined by the maker bank that it is not payable.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using

the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process does not involve any transfer of MICR information for the sole purpose of pre-determining return items to preclude the paper checks from initially being sent to the maker bank for checks that will be returned. It uses the inventive process to move images of checks electronically and have funds moved into the depositor's accounts as a result of the check collection processes. As a result of this processing it may be determined at anytime that a check will not be payable by the maker. If so this determination will be made based on the image data that is created from the original check. Return decisions will be made using image and MICR data associated with the capture of the check. If return decisions are made on the image data it is incidental to the overall purpose of remote image capture and processing of the invention and does not follow the same procedures or notification paths, as does the reference.

H. Geer Patent

United States Patent No. 5,583,759, MECHANISM FOR EXPEDITING THE DEPOSIT, TRANSPORT AND SUBMISSION OF CHECKS INTO THE PAYMENT SYSTEM, issued on December 10, 1996 to Terry L. Geer. This reference includes the capture of financial information at locations created for lock box processing. The lock box process allows for checks or other financial instruments to be captured along with a payment coupon as part of the payment process. The check images are captured as well as the MICR line. The checks can either be sent to a central site for capture and presentment through the normal check clearing paths or the MICR line information is captured at the lock box site and sent to the central site for further electronic sorting and processing both with regard to the introduction of the checks into the payment system and the crediting of funds

represented by the checks to the payee's account at the bank.. When the image is captured it is retained for research purposes. Once at the central site the checks or electronic totals are credited to the account of the sender and the check information is forwarded through the electronic channels.

The current patentable process differs in that it contains nothing related to payment processing. The process is designed to capture images and MICR line information of the checks that are going to be credited to the payee's account and processed as an image through the check clearing channels. Once the check is captured it is voided and can be retained, destroyed by the depositor, or returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed.

The primary differences are that the inventive process is not a lock box process, and the process to be patented is based on using check images for the clearing process as compared to bank information from the checks as in the referenced patent. In addition, the patent is designed to scrutinize the check data at the remote site as it is being captured through an interactive process with a central site to ensure the data and depositor information is complete and correct. Any check not passing this scrutiny will either reject for manual processing, or the data will be changed with interactive direction from the central site, and the image is processed. The checks are also endorsed and voided (to keep them from being re-deposited) at the direction of the central computers or check processing personnel. At this point the physical check can either be filed, returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed by the depositor.

I. **Josephson et al. Patent**

United States Patent No. 5,412,190, ELECTRONIC CHECK PRESENTMENT SYSTEM HAVING A RETURN ITEM NOTIFICATION SYSTEM INCORPORATED THEREIN, issued on May 2, 1995 to Stanley M. Josephson, et al. The reference deals with transmitting check MICR information after the capture of said information using the normally accepted methods of capturing check information. The transmitted MICR uses an improved Electronic Check Presentment (ECP) system and the information is used by the recipient financial institution to determine if the check is payable out of the makers account. If the check is not payable information is sent to the capturing institution to not send the paper check. The check is instead returned to the depositor for return to the maker or redeposit. This process does not deal in any way with the remote deposit of checks, or eliminating the processing of checks using paper checks from the point of first capture, etc.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process does not involve any transfer of MICR information for the sole purpose of pre-determining return items to preclude the paper checks from initially being sent to the maker bank for checks that will be returned. It uses the inventive process to move images of checks electronically and have funds moved into the depositor's accounts as a result of the check collection processes. As a result of this processing it may be determined at anytime that a check will not be payable by the maker. If so this determination will be made based on the image data that is created from the original check. Return decisions will be made using image data and not the MICR data associated with the capture of the

check. If return decisions are made on the image data it is incidental to the overall purpose of remote image capture and processing of the invention and does not follow the same procedures or notification paths, as does the reference.

J. Campbell et al. Patent

United States Patent No. 5,373,550, TRANSMISSION OF CHECK IMAGES BY WAY OF A PUBLIC SWITCHED TELEPHONE NETWORK, issued on December 13, 1994 to Walter G. Campbell et al. The reference deals with the hardware and network required to transmit images of checks. It does not deal with the processes or purposes used to capture and process checks – only the physical transmission of such information.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process involves the transmission of information and check images associated with a particular deposit and/or depositor. However, the transmission of such data will be done using commonly accepted commercially available transmission facilities and/or hardware.

K. Perazza Patent

United States Patent No. 5,326,959, AUTOMATED CUSTOMER INITIATED ENTRY REMITTANCE PROCESSING SYSTEM, issued on July 5, 1994 to Justin J. Perazza. The reference is designed to pay bills through the automatic transfer of funds from an individuals/businesses.

accounts. This process uses the traditional funds transfer processes (ACH, ATM, Teller Transfers, etc.) that are initiated by a process utilizing an inventive "Customer Payment Instruction" sheet that is filled out by the bill payer and given to their financial institution bank or branch location. This is designed to be a manual process for tellers to do in their quiet periods. If the volume is great enough the reference alludes to using automatic envelope opening equipment and/or manual or semi-automatic equipment for reading the CPI's. There is no specific reference as to if this equipment currently exists or if it would need to be invented.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process does not involve any transfer of funds through the normal funds transfer processes for the purpose of payment processing. It uses the inventive process to move images of checks electronically and have funds moved into the depositor's accounts as a result of the check deposit and collection processes.

L. **Rogan et al. Patent**

United States Patent No. 5,321,816, LOCAL-REMOTE APPARATUS WITH SPECIALIZED IMAGE STORAGE MODULES, issued on June 14, 1994 to James D. Rogan et al. This reference is for a storage system for high speed, high volume data storage. This patent does not deal with the physical handling and/or editing of the check capture process. It is an apparatus that "provides a network combining a local site having a host computer and a specialized storage and retrieval module for storing image information which is connected to a remote site having document

processing equipment working with remote specialized storage retrieval modules for storage of image and information data. While the system uses imaging technology to capture and process images of documents for item processing it is not specifically concerned with the traditional processes of capturing check, posting them to payee accounts and presenting the checks at the payor bank for collection. Rather it deals with the hardware and software to allow for the capture and storage of such.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. The invention is not specifically concerned with the hardware and software used for the storage. It will use whatever is appropriate and available on the market for this. The specific focus of the invention is the process involved in eliminating checks and using their images for processing and collection.

M. Stephens et al. Patent

United States Patent No. 5,237,159, ELECTRONIC CHECK PRESENTMENT SYSTEM, issued on August 17, 1993 to Stephens et al. The reference is based on traditional check capture in central locations. The depositor takes their deposit to a bank or branch and the deposit is forwarded to the central capture site. The checks are captured on check sorters and forwarded to the maker bank for collection of funds. The bank of first deposit extracts MICR data from the captured information and forwards that information to the maker bank where the maker bank matches the electronic information to the paper items when they arrive.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for collection. The reference deals with the sorting and routing of physical checks at centralized locations while the invention deals with capturing check images at remote locations and using the check images to present to the maker bank for collection. The invention further eliminates the ongoing need for the physical so they can be destroyed by the depositor or returned to the check maker, while the reference depends on the physical items for the collection process.

N. **Case Patent**

United States Patent No. 4,358,671, CHECK PROCESSING SYSTEM, issued on November 9, 1982 to John M. Case. The reference relies on a specially designed check to collect funds. The check is designed such that it can be processed through the normal paper check collection channels. It also has special characteristics that mark it as a check that can be processed through the EFT processes. In either circumstance the check is presented at a bank or branch of the bank of first deposit and it is sent to a central site for capture. Once presented at the central site the check is proof encoded with the check amount and processed through the bank of first deposit's check capture system. If the check is marked for EFT collection the appropriate MICR information is loaded into a data file for processing through the EFT process.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking,

savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for collection. The reference deals with the sorting and routing of physical checks from into a central site for collection and the method of collection is either the normal paper check collection path or through the EFT path. The reference does not use image data in any way to identify, process or clear checks to the drawer bank. The patent is designed specifically to use images of the checks captured at remote locations for processing and collection.

O. **Braun et al. Patent**

United States Patent No. 4,321,672, FINANCIAL DATA PROCESSING SYSTEM, issued on March 23, 1982 to Edward L. Braun. The reference is a method for providing user access to a selected group of document images of all kinds including check images. The traditional high-speed image capture is used to acquire and store the image of the checks. Once the image is created additional reference data is added to it (by the reference patent) and it is stored for retrieval (CD, print, and on-line viewing, etc.). This system is first and foremost an image storage, retrieval and view system with the traditional check processing and collection methodology continuing and “feeding” this system to enable it to store and retrieve images for later reference. This system does not deal with check depositing, rather it is the beneficiary of traditional check depositing and processing.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking,

savings, etc.), creating an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment.

P. **Owens et al. Patent**

United States Patent No. 4,264,808, METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR ELECTRONIC IMAGE PROCESSING OF DOCUMENTS FOR ACCOUNTING PURPOSES, issued on April 28, 1981 to Clifford J. Owens et al. The reference patent allows for remote capture of documents (some of which may be checks) for accounting purposes. In the preferred embodiment, the system is referred to as a banking system. Checks are taken to a teller location as per column 9 line 7 of Patent 4,264,808. The documents are manually prepared and control documents inserted prior to the checks being read by a machine designed to read an image of the check. Once an image is taken it is electronically transmitted to a processing site (for preprocessing the image data) and the checks are physically routed to the same site where the physical items are matched to the electronic preprocessed data. The physical checks are then matched to the electronic image data, the check amount is encoded in MICR ink on the physical checks, and the checks are then routed to the maker banks while the imaged data is used for interfacing appropriated data to the accounting systems.

The inventive process allows for capturing images for accounting purposes as well as for check clearing purposes using only the image rather than the physical item. The checks can be captured at any location that has a physical device required for reading images and identifying MICR line information.. It is not necessary to present the checks for deposit at a bank or bank branch location as in the referenced patent. Once imaged the physical item can either be filed, returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed by the depositor. The physical item is not

required by the inventive process as is the case in the reference patent. Another difference is that the patent is designed to scrutinize the check data at the remote site as it is being captured through an interactive process with a central site to ensure the data and depositor information is complete and correct. Any check not passing this scrutiny will either reject for manual processing, or the data will be changed with interactive direction from the central site, and the image is processed. The checks are also endorsed and voided (to keep them from being re-deposited) at the direction of the central computers or check processing personnel. At this point the physical check can either be filed, returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed by the depositor.

CONCLUSION

While general discussions of the differences between the references as located in the patent search and the invention as disclosed in the patent application at hand have been freely and openly produced, it should be appreciated that the actual scope of the invention is defined by the claims of the invention. The claims of the present invention are readily distinguishable from the teachings of each of the references cited and discussed herein. Thus, Applicants respectfully submit that the claims are neither anticipated nor rendered obvious by any of the references cited herein. Prompt allowance is expected and appreciated. Should the Examiner find any impediments to prompt allowance, they are invited to contact the attorney of record below.

DATED this 29 day of July, 2000.

Respectfully submitted,



Kevin K. Johanson
Attorney for Applicant
Registration No. 38,506



022913

PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE

G:\DATA\wpdocs2\CLIA\KKJ\ZIONS\PET-SPECIAL-15.doc

#3



UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Patent and Trademark Office
ASSISTANT SECRETARY AND COMMISSIONER
OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
Washington, D.C. 20231

CHANGE OF ADDRESS/POWER OF ATTORNEY

2163

FILE LOCATION 27C1 SERIAL NUMBER 09560779 PATENT NUMBER

THE CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS HAS BEEN CHANGED TO CUSTOMER # 22913

THE PRACTITIONERS OF RECORD HAVE BEEN CHANGED TO CUSTOMER # 22913

THE FEE ADDRESS HAS BEEN CHANGED TO CUSTOMER # 22913

ON 08/31/00 THE ADDRESS OF RECORD FOR CUSTOMER NUMBER 22913 IS:

WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY
1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE
SALT LAKE CITY UT 84111

RECEIVED
NOV 30 2000
Technology Center 2100

AND THE PRACTITIONERS OF RECORD FOR CUSTOMER NUMBER 22913 ARE:




28651	29843	30148	32434	34263	34521	36153	36596	37246	37335
38219	38506	39166	39330	40831	40858	41348	42539	42556	42685
42785	43332	44136	44515	45454	45576	45666	46081		

PTO INSTRUCTIONS: PLEASE TAKE THE FOLLOWING ACTION WHEN THE CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS HAS BEEN CHANGED TO CUSTOMER NUMBER: RECORD, ON THE NEXT AVAILABLE CONTENTS LINE OF THE FILE JACKET, 'ADDRESS CHANGE TO CUSTOMER NUMBER'. LINE THROUGH THE OLD ADDRESS ON THE FILE JACKET LABEL AND ENTER ONLY THE 'CUSTOMER NUMBER' AS THE NEW ADDRESS. FILE THIS LETTER IN THE FILE JACKET. WHEN ABOVE CHANGES ARE ONLY TO FEE ADDRESS AND/OR PRACTITIONERS OF RECORD, FILE LETTER IN THE FILE JACKET. THIS FILE IS ASSIGNED TO GAU 2765.

TRANSMITTAL OF INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT (Under 37 CFR 1.97(b) or 1.97(c))			Docket No. 7905.15	
In Re Application Of: Buchanan et al.				
Serial No. 09/560,779	Filing Date 4/28/00	Examiner Not Yet Assigned	Group Art Unit 2761	
<p>Title: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION</p>				
<p>Address to: Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231</p>				
37 CFR 1.97(b)				
<p>1. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The Information Disclosure Statement submitted herewith is being filed within three months of the filing of a national application; within three months of the date of entry of the national stage as set forth in 37 CFR 1.491 in an international application; or before the mailing date of a first Office Action on the merits, whichever event occurs last.</p>				
37 CFR 1.97(c)				
<p>2. <input type="checkbox"/> The Information Disclosure Statement submitted herewith is being filed after three months of the filing of a national application, or the date of entry of the national stage as set forth in 37 CFR 1.491 in an international application; or after the mailing date of a first Office Action on the merits, whichever occurred last but before the mailing date of either:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. a Final Action under 37 CFR 1.113, or 2. a Notice of Allowance under 37 CFR 1.311, <p style="margin-left: 40px;">whichever occurs first.</p>				
Also submitted herewith is:				
<p><input type="checkbox"/> a certification as specified in 37 CFR 1.97(e);</p>				
OR				
<p><input type="checkbox"/> the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(p) for submission of an Information Disclosure Statement under 37 CFR 1.97(c).</p>				



RECEIVED
 JUN 5 2001
 Technology Center 2100

TRANSMITTAL OF INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT (Under 37 CFR 1.97(b) or 1.97(c))			Docket No. 7905.15
In Re Application Of: Buchanan et al.			
Serial No. 09/560,779	Filing Date 4/28/00	Examiner Not Yet Assigned	Group Art Unit 2761
Title: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION			
Payment of Fee (Only complete if Applicant elects to pay the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(p))			
<input type="checkbox"/> A check in the amount of _____ is attached. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The Assistant Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge and credit Deposit Account No. 23-31 as described below. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.			
<input type="checkbox"/> Charge the amount of _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Credit any overpayment. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Charge any additional fee required.			
Certificate of Transmission by Facsimile* I certify that this document and authorization to charge deposit account is being facsimile transmitted to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (Fax. No. _____) on _____ (Date) _____ Signature _____ Typed or Printed Name of Person Signing Certificate		Certificate of Mailing by First Class Mail I certify that this document and fee is being deposited on <u>May 29, 2001</u> with the U.S. Postal Service as first class mail under 37 C.F.R. 1.8 and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231.  Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence Kevin K. Johanson _____ Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Correspondence	
*This certificate may only be used if paying by deposit account.  Signature KEVIN K. JOHANSON, Reg. No. 38,506 Dated: <u>May 29, 2001</u>			
 022913 PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE			
CC:			



#4
mm
6-7-01

PATENT APPLICATION
Docket No: 7905.15

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re application of)
)
	Buchanan, et al.)
) Art Unit
Serial No.	09/560,779) 2761
)
Filed:	April 28, 2000)
)
For:	METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING)
	FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS)
	PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL)
	INSTITUTION)

RECEIVED
 JUN 5 2001
 Technology Center 2100

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
UNDER 37 CFR § 1.97

Assistant Commissioner for Patents
Washington, DC 20231

Dear Sir:

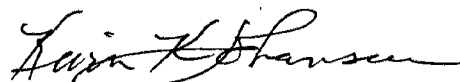
Please find, pursuant to 37 CFR § 1.98(a)(1), enclosed Form PTO-1449 that contains a list of all patents, publications, or other items that have come to the attention of one or more of the individuals designated in 37 CFR § 1.56(c). While no representation is made that any of these references may be "prior art" within the meaning of that term under 37 CFR §§ 102 or 103, the enclosed list of references is disclosed to fully comply with the duty of disclosure set forth in 37 CFR § 1.56.

Pursuant to 37 CFR § 1.97(g) and (h), Applicant makes no representation that a search has been made or that the information cited is considered to be material to patentability. Additionally, Applicant makes no representation regarding the completeness of this list nor represents that other art does not exist.

In accordance with 37 CFR §§ 1.97 and 1.98, a copy of each of the listed references or relevant portion thereof is also enclosed.

DATED this 29 day of May 2001.

Respectfully submitted,



KEVIN K. JOHANSON
Attorney for Applicant
Registration No. 38,506

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY
1000 Eagle Gate Tower
60 East South Temple
Salt Lake City, Utah 84111
Telephone: (801) 533-9800
Facsimile: (801) 328-1707

G:\DATA\WPDOCS\DF\ZIONS\15 SUPP IDS.DOC
Docket No.: 7905.15

03/12/2002 17:06 FAX 703 305 3719

DIRECTOR OFFICE

001

*** RX REPORT ***

RECEPTION OK

TX/RX NO	5495	
CONNECTION TEL		18013281707
CONNECTION ID		
ST. TIME	03/12 16:56	
USAGE T	09'56	
PGS.	26	
RESULT	OK	

MAR-12-02 TUE 02:57 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 01/26

WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY

60 East South Temple, Suite 1000
Salt Lake City, Utah 84111
(801) 533-9800
Fax: (801) 328-1707

FAX TRANSMISSION COVER SHEET

Date: March 12, 2002

To: Norma Watson
PETITIONS BRANCH
United States Patent and Trademark Office

Fax: (703) 305-3719

Re: 7905.15


Sender: Dianne Freedman, Paralegal for Fraser D. Roy

**Attached is a copy of the Petition to Make Special for Application
Serial No. 09/560,779, as filed on July 28, 2000.**

**YOU SHOULD RECEIVE 26 PAGES, INCLUDING THIS COVER SHEET. IF YOU
DO NOT RECEIVE ALL THE PAGES, PLEASE CALL (801) 533-9800.**

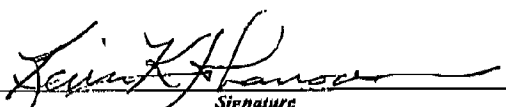

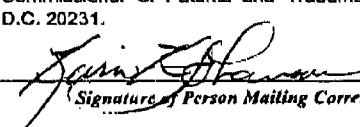
MAR-12-02 TUE 02:57 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 03/26

CERTIFICATE OF MAILING BY "EXPRESS MAIL" (37 CFR 1.10)			Docket No. 7905.15	
Applicant(s): Buchanan et al.				
Serial No. 09/560,779	Filing Date April 28, 2000	Examiner Not Yet Assigned	Group Art Unit Not Yet Assigned	
Invention: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION				
<p>I hereby certify that this <u>Petition to Make Special (including the items listed below)</u> <small>(Identify type of correspondence)</small></p> <p>is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 in an envelope addressed to: The Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231-0001 on <u>July 28, 2000</u> <small>(Date)</small></p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 20px;"> <u>Kevin K. Johanson</u> <small>(Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Correspondence)</small>  <small>(Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence)</small> <u>EL550340601US</u> <small>("Express Mail" Mailing Label Number)</small> </div> <p style="margin-top: 30px;">Note: Each paper must have its own certificate of mailing.</p> <p>Transmitted: Petition to Make Special Under 37 C.F.R. § 102(d) (20 pgs.) Transmittal Letter in triplicate (1 pg.s) Check No. <u>116836</u> in the amount of \$130.00 for filing fee of Petition Form PTO-1449 Copies of sixteen (16) prior references Certificate of Mailing by Express Mail Label No. EL550340601US Postcard</p>				

MAR-12-02 TUE 02:58 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 04/26

TRANSMITTAL LETTER (General - Patent Pending)			Docket No. 7905.15
In Re Application Of: Buchanan et al.			
Serial No. 09/560,779	Filing Date April 28, 2000	Examiner Not Yet Assigned	Group Art Unit
Title: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION			
<p style="text-align: center;"><u>TO THE COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS:</u></p> <p>Transmitted herewith is:</p> <p>Petition to Make Special Under 37 C.F.R. Section 102(d) Transmittal Letter Certificate of Mailing by "Express Mail" Label No. EL550340601US Copies of sixteen (16) references Check No. 116836 in the amount of \$130</p> <p>in the above identified application.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> No additional fee is required.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A check in the amount of \$130.00 is attached.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge and credit Deposit Account No. 23-3178 as described below. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><input type="checkbox"/> Charge the amount of</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Credit any overpayment.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Charge any additional fee required.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: flex-end; margin-top: 20px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  Signature Kevin K. Johanson Registration No. 38,506 </div> <div style="text-align: right;"> Dated: July 28, 2000 </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: flex-end; margin-top: 20px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  022913 PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE CC: </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: 300px;"> <p style="font-size: small;">I certify that this document and fee is being deposited on <u>July 28, 2000</u> with the U.S. Postal Service as first class mail under 37 C.F.R. 1.8 and is addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence Kevin K. Johanson Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Correspondence </div> </div> </div>			

MAR-12-02 TUE 02:58 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER &SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 05/26

Express Mail Label No. EL550340601US

PATENT APPLICATION
Docket No.: 7905,15

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re application of:)	
)	
Buchanan et al.)	
)	Art Unit
Title:)	
METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING)	
FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS)	
PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL)	
INSTITUTION)	
)	
Serial No:)	
09/560,779)	
)	
Filed:)	
April 28, 2000)	

PETITION TO MAKE SPECIAL UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 102 (d)

Honorable Commissioner of
Patents and Trademarks
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Applicants hereby respectfully requests that examination of the above-referenced patent application be advanced out of turn and requests that the prosecution thereof be performed in an expedited manner. In conformance with 37 C.F.R. § 102 (d), Applicants submit this written petition accompanied by the filing fee set forth in 37 C.F.R. § 1.17 (i) (2).

Should a restriction requirement be thought necessary, Applicants request that prompt telephonic notice be given to Kevin K. Johanson at the following telephone number at which time Applicants will make an election without traverse ((801) 533-9800).

MAR-12-02 TUE 02:58 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 06/26

Applicants have caused to be made two careful and thorough pre-examination searches of the prior art. One search was performed by Roger Flagg, a professional searcher with Express Search. Examiners MacDonald and Tkacs, in Art Unit 2761 were consulted regarding the field of search. Mr. Flagg searched Class 705, subclasses 35, 39 and 42; Class 235, subclass 379. The other search was performed by Applicants.

The following references were discovered in the above-referenced pre-examination search and will be discussed in detail below:

U.S. Patent No. 6,032,137 (Ballard)
U.S. Patent No. 5,999,624 (Hopkins)
U.S. Patent No. 5,930,778 (Geer)
U.S. Patent No. 5,895,455 (Bellinger et al.)
U.S. Patent No. 5,832,463 (Funk)
U.S. Patent No. 5,787,403 (Randle)
U.S. Patent No. 5,691,524 (Josephson)
U.S. Patent No. 5,583,759 (Geer)
U.S. Patent No. 5,412,190 (Josephson et al.)
U.S. Patent No. 5,373,550 (Campbell et al.)
U.S. Patent No. 5,326,959 (Perazza)
U.S. Patent No. 5,321,816 (Rogan et al.)
U.S. Patent No. 5,237,159 (Stephens et al.)
U.S. Patent No. 4,358,671 (Case)
U.S. Patent No. 4,321,672 (Braun et al.)
U.S. Patent No. 4,264,808 (Owens et al.)

MAR-12-02 TUE 02:58 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 07/26

**DETAILED DISCUSSION OF THE REFERENCES AS SPECIFIED
IN 37 C.F.R. § 1.111 (b) AND (c)**

I. NATURE OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

A system that includes computer hardware, computer software, apparatus, and methodology that enables individuals, businesses, and all types of organizations (both for profit and non-profit) to capture and securely transmit check images (including, but not limited to, personal checks, business checks, travelers checks, money orders, merchant coupons, food coupons, line of credit checks, etc.), deposit information, and other information from remote locations (i.e., locations that could include the financial institution's remote locations, other financial institution's locations, businesses, private residences, etc.), for the purpose of having those checks credited to the depositing individual's or organization's bank account(s) and having the check images (and/or physical checks) entered into the bank check clearing channels for ultimate delivery to the maker bank for payment out of the maker's account.

II. DESCRIPTION OF REFERENCES FOUND IN PRE-EXAMINATION SEARCH

A. Ballard Patent

United States Patent No. 6,032,137, REMOTE IMAGE CAPTURE WITH CENTRALIZED PROCESSING AND STORAGE, issued on February 29, 2000 to Claudio R. Ballard. The referenced patent is intended for the automated storage and retrieval of all kinds of remotely captured transaction data from a variety of sources including credit card transactions, smart card transactions, automated teller machine (ATM) transactions, consumer purchases, business forms, W2 forms, birth certificates, deeds and insurance documents.

MAR-12-02 TUE 02:59 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 08/26

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process involves storage and retrieval of data and images captured from at the remote check capture locations. However, the storage and retrieval of data is a by-product of the invention and will use commonly accepted commercially available storage and retrieval hardware and software.

B. Hopkins Patent

United States Patent No. 5,999,624, REMOTE FINANCIAL TRANSACTION SYSTEM, issued on December 7, 1999 to W. Dale Hopkins. The reference allows for remote payments of financial obligations using a payment module over communications link and incorporating password security. The reference uses credit card magnetic stripe information to identify what accounts the payments should be transferred from.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location), which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process involves the transmission of information and check images associated with a particular deposit and/or depositor. The invention has no purpose or design associated with transmitting data from remote locations for the purpose of payment of financial obligations.

MAR-12-02 TUE 02:59 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 09/26

C. **Geer Patent**

United States Patent No. 5,930,778, SYSTEM FOR EXPEDITING THE CLEARING OF FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS AND COORDINATING THE SAME WITH INVOICE PROCESSING AT THE POINT OF RECEIPT, issue on July 27, 1999 to Terry L. Geer. This reference includes the capture of financial information at locations created for lock box processing. The lock box process allows for checks or other financial instruments to be captured along with a payment coupon as part of the payment process. The check images are captured as well as the MICR line. The checks can either be sent to a central site for capture and presentment through the normal check clearing paths or the MICR line information is captured at the lock box site and sent to the central site for further electronic sorting and processing both with regard to the introduction of the checks into the payment system and the crediting of funds represented by the checks to the payee's account at the bank. When the image is captured it is retained for research purposes. Once at the central site the checks or electronic totals are credited to the account of the sender and the check information is forwarded through the electronic channels.

The current patentable process differs in that it contains nothing related to payment processing. The process is designed to capture images and MICR line information of the checks that are going to be credited to the payee's account and processed as an image through the check clearing channels. Once the check is captured it is voided and can be retained, destroyed by the depositor, or returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed.

The primary differences are that the inventive process is not a lock box process, and the process to be patented is based on using check images for the clearing process as compared to bank information from the checks as in the referenced patent. In addition, the patent is designed to

MAR-12-02 TUE 03:00 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 10/26

scrutinize the check data at the remote site as it is being captured through an interactive process with a central site to ensure the data and depositor information is complete and correct. Any check not passing this scrutiny may either be rejected for manual processing, or the data may be changed with interactive direction from the central site, and the image is processed. The checks are also endorsed and voided (to keep them from being re-deposited) at the direction of the central computers or check processing personnel. At this point the physical check can either be filed, returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed by the depositor.

D. Bellinger et al. Patent

United States Patent No. 5,895,455, DOCUMENT IMAGE DISPLAY SYSTEM AND METHOD, issued on April 20, 1999 to David T. Bellinger et al. The reference is a method for providing user access to a selected group of document images of all kinds including check images. The traditional high-speed image capture is used to acquire and store the image of the checks. Once the image is created additional reference data is added to it (by the reference patent) and it is stored for retrieval (CD, print, and on-line viewing, etc.). This system is first and foremost an image storage, retrieval and view system with the traditional check processing and collection methodology continuing and "feeding" this system to enable it to store and retrieve images for later reference. This system does not deal with check depositing, rather it is the beneficiary of traditional check depositing and processing.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking,

MAR-12-02 TUE 03:00 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 11/26

savings, etc.), creating an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment.

E. **Funk Patent**

United States Patent No. 5,832,463, AUTOMATED SYSTEM AND METHOD FOR CHECKLESS CHECK TRANSACTION, issued on November 3, 1998 to Wade L. Funk. The reference deals with capturing check image and other information associated with a point of sale transaction. The focus of point of sale transactions is to transfer funds out of the accounts of the purchaser(s) for the purpose of paying for a monetary transaction at a place of business. This allows for a check-less transaction for payment of monetary obligations. Images of checks are not used for creating the information required to transfer money out of the purchaser's account, the check image created is used for research purposes only. The MICR line information is used by the vendor to create the information required to transfer funds out of the check maker's account into the vendor's account in payment of the financial obligation.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. While the reference deals with check information to transfer funds out of the purchasers account to pay for a monetary transaction, the invention deals with depositing funds into a depositor's account from check(s) given to them as settlement of an obligation, and to present the deposited checks through the check collections processes and systems to transfer funds from the accounts of the check makers

MAR-12-02 TUE 03:01 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 12/26

into the account of the depositor. The invention does not have any reference or purpose of transferring funds out of accounts for settling monetary transactions.

F. Randle Patent

United States Patent No. 5,787,403, BANK-CENTRIC SERVICE PLATFORM, NETWORK AND SYSTEM, issued on July 28, 1998 to William M. Randle. This invention relates to a bank-centric network identifying a bank as a central service provider to a customer and is designed to provide user access, presentation and gateway functions that permit a customer to communicate with product providers through a financial institution. The network is customer-accessed and associated with a conventional bank or financial institution and provides conventional information, products and services offered by a bank and is a gateway to other "non-bank" information.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process involves storage and retrieval of data and images captured from at the remote check capture locations. However, the storage and retrieval of data is a by-product of the invention and will use commonly accepted commercially available storage and retrieval hardware and software. The information created and stored by the invention would be the type of information that the reference could make available through its processes. However, the invention will have the ability to store and make available information also using conventional storage and retrieval hardware and software.

MAR-12-02 TUE 03:01 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER &SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 13/26

The exact presentation of the retrieved data will be directed by the inventive software to meet the needs of the institution owning the software.

G. Josephson Patent

United States Patent No. 5,691,524, ELECTRONIC CHECK PRESENTMENT SYSTEM HAVING A NON-ECP EXCEPTIONS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM INCORPORATED THEREIN, issued on November 25, 1997 to Stanley M. Josephson. The reference deals with transmitting check MICR information after the capture of said information using the normally accepted methods of capturing check information. The transmitted MICR uses an improved Electronic Check Presentment (ECP) system and the information is used by the recipient financial institution to determine if the check is payable out of the makers account. If the check is not payable information is sent to the capturing institution to not send the paper check. The check is instead returned to the depositor for return to the maker or redeposit. This process does not deal with in any way with the remote deposit of checks. It also does not eliminate the processing of checks using paper checks from the point of first capture, etc. Is specifically used to pre-notify the maker bank of checks being processed for them by the bank of first deposit so that the maker bank can determine if the checks are all going to be payable at their bank. If they are not going to be payable, the bank of first deposit will return the check to the payee instead of routing the check to the maker bank and receiving it back from the maker bank when it is determined by the maker bank that it is not payable.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using

MAR-12-02 TUE 03:01 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 14/26

the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process does not involve any transfer of MICR information for the sole purpose of pre-determining return items to preclude the paper checks from initially being sent to the maker bank for checks that will be returned. It uses the inventive process to move images of checks electronically and have funds moved into the depositor's accounts as a result of the check collection processes. As a result of this processing it may be determined at anytime that a check will not be payable by the maker. If so this determination will be made based on the image data that is created from the original check. Return decisions will be made using image and MICR data associated with the capture of the check. If return decisions are made on the image data it is incidental to the overall purpose of remote image capture and processing of the invention and does not follow the same procedures or notification paths, as does the reference.

H. Geer Patent

United States Patent No. 5,583,759, MECHANISM FOR EXPEDITING THE DEPOSIT, TRANSPORT AND SUBMISSION OF CHECKS INTO THE PAYMENT SYSTEM, issued on December 10, 1996 to Terry L. Geer. This reference includes the capture of financial information at locations created for lock box processing. The lock box process allows for checks or other financial instruments to be captured along with a payment coupon as part of the payment process. The check images are captured as well as the MICR line. The checks can either be sent to a central site for capture and presentment through the normal check clearing paths or the MICR line information is captured at the lock box site and sent to the central site for further electronic sorting and processing both with regard to the introduction of the checks into the payment system and the crediting of funds

MAR-12-02 TUE 03:02 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER &SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 15/26

represented by the checks to the payee's account at the bank.. When the image is captured it is retained for research purposes. Once at the central site the checks or electronic totals are credited to the account of the sender and the check information is forwarded through the electronic channels.

The current patentable process differs in that it contains nothing related to payment processing. The process is designed to capture images and MICR line information of the checks that are going to be credited to the payee's account and processed as an image through the check clearing channels. Once the check is captured it is voided and can be retained, destroyed by the depositor, or returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed.

The primary differences are that the inventive process is not a lock box process, and the process to be patented is based on using check images for the clearing process as compared to bank information from the checks as in the referenced patent. In addition, the patent is designed to scrutinize the check data at the remote site as it is being captured through an interactive process with a central site to ensure the data and depositor information is complete and correct. Any check not passing this scrutiny will either reject for manual processing, or the data will be changed with interactive direction from the central site, and the image is processed. The checks are also endorsed and voided (to keep them from being re-deposited) at the direction of the central computers or check processing personnel. At this point the physical check can either be filed, returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed by the depositor.

I. Josephson et al. Patent

United States Patent No. 5,412,190, ELECTRONIC CHECK PRESENTMENT SYSTEM HAVING A RETURN ITEM NOTIFICATION SYSTEM INCORPORATED THEREIN, issued on May 2, 1995 to Stanley M. Josephson, et al. The reference deals with transmitting check MICR information after the capture of said information using the normally accepted methods of capturing check information. The transmitted MICR uses an improved Electronic Check Presentment (ECP) system and the information is used by the recipient financial institution to determine if the check is payable out of the makers account. If the check is not payable information is sent to the capturing institution to not send the paper check. The check is instead returned to the depositor for return to the maker or redeposit. This process does not deal in any way with the remote deposit of checks, or eliminating the processing of checks using paper checks from the point of first capture, etc.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process does not involve any transfer of MICR information for the sole purpose of pre-determining return items to preclude the paper checks from initially being sent to the maker bank for checks that will be returned. It uses the inventive process to move images of checks electronically and have funds moved into the depositor's accounts as a result of the check collection processes. As a result of this processing it may be determined at anytime that a check will not be payable by the maker. If so this determination will be made based on the image data that is created from the original check. Return decisions will be made using image data and not the MICR data associated with the capture of the

check. If return decisions are made on the image data it is incidental to the overall purpose of remote image capture and processing of the invention and does not follow the same procedures or notification paths, as does the reference.

J. Campbell et al. Patent

United States Patent No. 5,373,550, TRANSMISSION OF CHECK IMAGES BY WAY OF A PUBLIC SWITCHED TELEPHONE NETWORK, issued on December 13, 1994 to Walter G. Campbell et al. The reference deals with the hardware and network required to transmit images of checks. It does not deal with the processes or purposes used to capture and process checks – only the physical transmission of such information.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process involves the transmission of information and check images associated with a particular deposit and/or depositor. However, the transmission of such data will be done using commonly accepted commercially available transmission facilities and/or hardware.

K. Perazza Patent

United States Patent No. 5,326,959, AUTOMATED CUSTOMER INITIATED ENTRY REMITTANCE PROCESSING SYSTEM, issued on July 5, 1994 to Justin J. Perazza. The reference is designed to pay bills through the automatic transfer of funds from an individuals/businesses

accounts. This process uses the traditional funds transfer processes (ACH, ATM, Teller Transfers, etc.) that are initiated by a process utilizing an inventive "Customer Payment Instruction" sheet that is filled out by the bill payer and given to their financial institution bank or branch location. This is designed to be a manual process for tellers to do in their quiet periods. If the volume is great enough the reference alludes to using automatic envelope opening equipment and/or manual or semi-automatic equipment for reading the CPI's. There is no specific reference as to if this equipment currently exists or if it would need to be invented.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. This process does not involve any transfer of funds through the normal funds transfer processes for the purpose of payment processing. It uses the inventive process to move images of checks electronically and have funds moved into the depositor's accounts as a result of the check deposit and collection processes.

L. Rogan et al. Patent

United States Patent No. 5,321,816, LOCAL-REMOTE APPARATUS WITH SPECIALIZED IMAGE STORAGE MODULES, issued on June 14, 1994 to James D. Rogan et al. This reference is for a storage system for high speed, high volume data storage. This patent does not deal with the physical handling and/or editing of the check capture process. It is an apparatus that "provides a network combining a local site having a host computer and a specialized storage and retrieval module for storing image information which is connected to a remote site having document

MAR-12-02 TUE 03:03 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 19/26

processing equipment working with remote specialized storage retrieval modules for storage of image and information data. While the system uses imaging technology to capture and process images of documents for item processing it is not specifically concerned with the traditional processes of capturing check, posting them to payee accounts and presenting the checks at the payor bank for collection. Rather it deals with the hardware and software to allow for the capture and storage of such.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment. The invention is not specifically concerned with the hardware and software used for the storage. It will use whatever is appropriate and available on the market for this. The specific focus of the invention is the process involved in eliminating checks and using their images for processing and collection.

M. Stephens et al. Patent

United States Patent No. 5,237,159, ELECTRONIC CHECK PRESENTMENT SYSTEM, issued on August 17, 1993 to Stephens et al. The reference is based on traditional check capture in central locations. The depositor takes their deposit to a bank or branch and the deposit is forwarded to the central capture site. The checks are captured on check sorters and forwarded to the maker bank for collection of funds. The bank of first deposit extracts MICR data from the captured information and forwards that information to the maker bank where the maker bank matches the electronic information to the paper items when they arrive.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking, savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for collection. The reference deals with the sorting and routing of physical checks at centralized locations while the invention deals with capturing check images at remote locations and using the check images to present to the maker bank for collection. The invention further eliminates the ongoing need for the physical so they can be destroyed by the depositor or returned to the check maker, while the reference depends on the physical items for the collection process.

N. Case Patent

United States Patent No. 4,358,671, CHECK PROCESSING SYSTEM, issued on November 9, 1982 to John M. Case. The reference relies on a specially designed check to collect funds. The check is designed such that it can be processed through the normal paper check collection channels. It also has special characteristics that mark it as a check that can be processed through the EFT processes. In either circumstance the check is presented at a bank or branch of the bank of first deposit and it is sent to a central site for capture. Once presented at the central site the check is proof encoded with the check amount and processed through the bank of first deposit's check capture system. If the check is marked for EFT collection the appropriate MICR information is loaded into a data file for processing through the EFT process.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking,

savings, etc.), creating and storing an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for collection. The reference deals with the sorting and routing of physical checks from into a central site for collection and the method of collection is either the normal paper check collection path or through the EFT path. The reference does not use image data in any way to identify, process or clear checks to the drawer bank. The patent is designed specifically to use images of the checks captured at remote locations for processing and collection.

O. **Braun et al. Patent**

United States Patent No. 4,321,672, FINANCIAL DATA PROCESSING SYSTEM, issued on March 23, 1982 to Edward L. Braum. The reference is a method for providing user access to a selected group of document images of all kinds including check images. The traditional high-speed image capture is used to acquire and store the image of the checks. Once the image is created additional reference data is added to it (by the reference patent) and it is stored for retrieval (CD, print, and on-line viewing, etc.). This system is first and foremost an image storage, retrieval and view system with the traditional check processing and collection methodology continuing and “feeding” this system to enable it to store and retrieve images for later reference. This system does not deal with check depositing, rather it is the beneficiary of traditional check depositing and processing.

The inventive patent is directed at enabling customers to deposit checks remotely (at a home, place of business, bank branch, or bank location) which includes crediting their account (checking,

savings, etc.), creating an electronic image of the checks so the original can be destroyed and using the image of the checks to present an image to the maker bank for payment.

P. Owens et al. Patent

United States Patent No. 4,264,808, METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR ELECTRONIC IMAGE PROCESSING OF DOCUMENTS FOR ACCOUNTING PURPOSES, issued on April 28, 1981 to Clifford J. Owens et al. The reference patent allows for remote capture of documents (some of which may be checks) for accounting purposes. In the preferred embodiment, the system is referred to as a banking system. Checks are taken to a teller location as per column 9 line 7 of Patent 4,264,808. The documents are manually prepared and control documents inserted prior to the checks being read by a machine designed to read an image of the check. Once an image is taken it is electronically transmitted to a processing site (for preprocessing the image data) and the checks are physically routed to the same site where the physical items are matched to the electronic pre-processed data. The physical checks are then matched to the electronic image data, the check amount is encoded in MICR ink on the physical checks, and the checks are then routed to the maker banks while the imaged data is used for interfacing appropriated data to the accounting systems.

The inventive process allows for capturing images for accounting purposes as well as for check clearing purposes using only the image rather than the physical item. The checks can be captured at any location that has a physical device required for reading images and identifying MICR line information.. It is not necessary to present the checks for deposit at a bank or bank branch location as in the referenced patent. Once imaged the physical item can either be filed, returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed by the depositor. The physical item is not

MAR-12-02 TUE 03:05 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER &SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 23/26

required by the inventive process as is the case in the reference patent. Another difference is that the patent is designed to scrutinize the check data at the remote site as it is being captured through an interactive process with a central site to ensure the data and depositor information is complete and correct. Any check not passing this scrutiny will either reject for manual processing, or the data will be changed with interactive direction from the central site, and the image is processed. The checks are also endorsed and voided (to keep them from being re-deposited) at the direction of the central computers or check processing personnel. At this point the physical check can either be filed, returned to the person who gave it to the depositor, or destroyed by the depositor.

MAR-12-02 TUE 03:05 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 24/26

CONCLUSION

While general discussions of the differences between the references as located in the patent search and the invention as disclosed in the patent application at hand have been freely and openly produced, it should be appreciated that the actual scope of the invention is defined by the claims of the invention. The claims of the present invention are readily distinguishable from the teachings of each of the references cited and discussed herein. Thus, Applicants respectfully submit that the claims are neither anticipated nor rendered obvious by any of the references cited herein. Prompt allowance is expected and appreciated. Should the Examiner find any impediments to prompt allowance, they are invited to contact the attorney of record below.

DATED this 28 day of July, 2000.

Respectfully submitted,



Kevin K. Johanson
Attorney for Applicant
Registration No. 38,506



022913

G:\DATA\wpdocs2\CI\AKK\ZIONS\PET-SPECIAL-15.doc

PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE

MAR-12-02 TUE 03:05 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 25/26

Form PTO-1449

Sheet 1 of 2

Applicant: Buchanan et al.

Serial No.: 09/560,779

Att'y Docket No. 7905.15

Filing Date: April 28, 2000

Group: _____

For: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL
INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM
A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATIONS MADE BY APPLICANTU.S. Patent Documents

<u>Examiner Initial*</u>	<u>Patent Number</u>	<u>Issue Date</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Class</u>	<u>Sub Class</u>	<u>Filing Date</u>
_____A1	6,032,137	*Feb. 29, 2000	Ballard	H04L	9/00	May 19, 1998
_____A2	5,999,624	*Dec. 7, 1999	Hopkins	H04K	1/00	Dec. 24, 1996
_____A3	5,930,778	Jul. 27, 1999	Geer	G06F	17/60	Jul. 11, 1996
_____A4	5,895,455	Apr. 20, 1999	Bellinger et al.	G06F	157/00	Aug. 14, 1996
_____A5	5,832,463	Nov. 3, 1998	Funk	G06F	17/60	Mar. 28, 1996
_____A6	5,787,403	Jul. 28, 1998	Randle	G06F	17/60	Mar. 8, 1995
_____A7	5,691,524	*Nov. 25, 1997	Josephson	G06F	17/60	May 15, 1996
_____A8	5,583,759	Dec. 10, 1996	Geer	G06F	17/00	Jul. 27, 1995
_____A9	5,412,190	*May 2, 1995	Josephson et al.	G06F	15/30	Feb. 26, 1993
_____A10	5,373,550	Dec. 13, 1994	Campbell et al.	H04M	11/00	Oct. 13, 1992
_____A11	5,326,959	Jul. 5, 1994	Perazza	G06F	15/30	Aug. 4, 1992
_____A12	5,321,816	Jun. 14, 1994	Rogan et al.	G06F	13/00	Dec. 9, 1992
_____A13	5,237,159	Aug. 17, 1993	Stephens et al.	G06F	15/30	Aug. 17, 1993
_____A14	4,358,671	Nov. 9, 1982	Case	G06K	1/14	Jun. 24, 1979
_____A15	4,321,672	Mar. 23, 1982	Braun et al.	G06F	15/30	Nov. 26, 1979
_____A16	4,264,808	Apr. 28, 1981	Quinn et al.	G06F	15/30	Oct. 6, 1979

References Cited by Applicants

Examiner: _____ Date Considered: _____

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

MAR-12-02 TUE 03:06 PM WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY FAX NO. 18013281707

P. 26/26

Form PTO-1449

Sheet 2 of 2

Applicant: Buchanan et al.

Serial No.: 09/560,779

Att'y Docket No. 7905.15

Filing Date: April 28, 2000

Group: _____

For: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL
INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM
A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION

Examiners will consider all citations submitted in conformance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.98 and MPEP Sec. 609 and place their initials adjacent the citations in the spaces provided on this form. Examiners will also initial citations not in conformance with the guidelines which may have been considered. A reference may be considered by the Examiner for any reason whether or not the citation is in full conformance with the guidelines. A line will be drawn through a citation if it is not in conformance with the guidelines AND has not been considered. A copy of the submitted form, as reviewed by the Examiner, will be returned to the applicant with the next communication. The original of the form will be entered into the application file.

Each citation initialed by the Examiner will be printed on the issued patent in the same manner as references cited by the Examiner on Form PTO-892.

The reference designations "A1," "A2," etc. (referring to Applicant's reference 1, Applicant's reference 2, etc.) will be used by the Examiner in the same manner as Examiner's reference designations "A," "B," "C," etc. on Office Action Form PTO-1142.

ORDATA\WP\DOCS\2\CLAIM\K\O\Z\O\N\S\1\9\5\1\1\6

Date Considered:

PPS-JHA000411



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

MAILED

MAR 26 2002

**DIRECTOR'S OFFICE
TECHNOLOGY CENTER 2100**

 Commissioner for Patents
 United States Patent and Trademark Office
 Washington, D.C. 20231
 www.uspto.gov

Paper No. 6

Kevin K. Johanson
 WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELY
 1000 Eagle Gate Tower
 60 East South Temple
 Salt Lake City, UT 84111

In re Application of: Danne L. Buchanan et al.)
 Application No. 09/560,779)
 Filed: April 28, 2000)
 For: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR)
 PROCESSING FINANCIAL)
 INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS)
 PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A)
 FINANCIAL INSTITUTION)

**DECISION ON PETITION
 FOR ACCELERATED
 EXAMINATION UNDER
 M.P.E.P. §708.02(VIII)**

This is a decision on the petition, filed July 28, 2000 under 37 C.F.R. §1.102(d) and M.P.E.P. §708.02(VIII): Accelerated Examination, to make the above-identified application special.

M.P.E.P. §708.02, Section VIII which sets out the prerequisites for a grantable petition for Accelerated Examination under 37 C.F.R. §1.102(d) states in relevant part:

A new application (one which has not received any examination by the examiner) may be granted special status provided that applicant (and this term includes applicant's attorney or agent) complies with each of the following items:

(a) Submits a petition to make special accompanied by the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(i);

(b) Presents all claims directed to a single invention, or if the Office determines that all the claims presented are not obviously directed to a single invention, will make an election without traverse as a prerequisite to the grant of special status.

(c) Submits a statement(s) that a pre - examination search was made, listing the field of search by class and subclass, publication, Chemical Abstracts, foreign patents, etc. A search made by a foreign patent office satisfies this requirement;

(d) Submits one copy each of the references deemed most closely related to the subject matter encompassed by the claims if said references are not already of record; and

Serial No. 09/560,779
Decision on Petition to Make Special

- 2 -

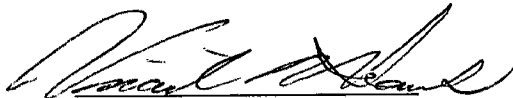
(e) Submits a detailed discussion of the references, which discussion points out, with the particularity required by 37 CFR 1.111(b) and (c), how the claimed subject matter is patentable over the references.

In those instances where the request for this special status does not meet all the prerequisites set forth above, *applicant will be notified and the defects in the request will be stated*. The application will remain in the status of a new application awaiting action in its regular turn. In those instances where a request is defective in one or more respects, applicant will be given one opportunity to perfect the request in a renewed petition to make special. If perfected, the request will then be granted. If not perfected in the first renewed petition, any additional renewed petitions to make special may or may not be considered at the discretion of the Group Special Program Examiner.

Applicant's submission is deficient in that there is no detailed discussion of the references as required by section (e) to the extent required by 37 CFR 1.111(b) and (c). Applicant's submission merely presents a general description for each of the sixteen references purported to be "most closely related" followed by what *appears* to be a description of the claimed invention. The discussion does not clearly point out the patentable novelty which the claims present in view of the references cited with the particularity required by 37 CFR 1.111(b) and (c).

Accordingly, the Petition is **DISMISSED**. The application file is being forwarded to Central Files to await examination in its proper turn based on its effective filing date.

Any request for reconsideration must be filed within two months of the mailing date of this decision.



Vincent N. Trans
Special Programs Examiner
Technology Center 2100
Computer Architecture, Software, and Electronic Commerce
(703) 305-9750



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
 United States Patent and Trademark Office
 Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
 Washington, D.C. 20231
 www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
09/560,779	04/28/2000	Danne L. Buchanan	7905-15	5156

22913 7590 04/19/2002

WORKMAN NYDEGGER & SEELEY
 1000 EAGLE GATE TOWER
 60 EAST SOUTH TEMPLE
 SALT LAKE CITY, UT 84111

EXAMINER

NGUYEN, NGA B

ART UNIT

PAPER NUMBER

2164

DATE MAILED: 04/19/2002

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

Office Action SummaryApplication No.
09/560,779

Applicant(s)

Buchanan et al.

Examiner

Nga B. Nguyen

Art Unit

2164**-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address --****Period for Reply**A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY IS SET TO EXPIRE three MONTH(S) FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION.

- Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136 (a). In no event, however, may a reply be timely filed after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- If the period for reply specified above is less than thirty (30) days, a reply within the statutory minimum of thirty (30) days will be considered timely.
- If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, cause the application to become ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133).
- Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing date of this communication, even if timely filed, may reduce any earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).

Status

- 1) ☒ Responsive to communication(s) filed on Apr 28, 2000
- 2a) ☐ This action is FINAL. 2b) ☒ This action is non-final.
- 3) ☐ Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 35 C.D. 11; 453 O.G. 213.

Disposition of Claims

- 4) ☒ Claim(s) 1-32 is/are pending in the application.
- 4a) Of the above, claim(s) _____ is/are withdrawn from consideration.
- 5) ☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are allowed.
- 6) ☒ Claim(s) 1-32 is/are rejected.
- 7) ☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are objected to.
- 8) ☐ Claims _____ are subject to restriction and/or election requirements.

Application Papers

- 9) ☐ The specification is objected to by the Examiner.
- 10) ☐ The drawing(s) filed on _____ is/are objected to by the Examiner.
- 11) ☐ The proposed drawing correction filed on _____ is: a) ☐ approved b) ☐ disapproved.
- 12) ☐ The oath or declaration is objected to by the Examiner.

Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119

- 13) ☐ Acknowledgement is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d).

a) ☐ All b) ☐ Some* c) ☐ None of:

1. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
2. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.
3. ☐ Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this National Stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

*See the attached detailed Office action for a list of the certified copies not received.

- 14) ☐ Acknowledgement is made of a claim for domestic priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(e).

Attachment(s)

- 15) ☒ Notice of References Cited (PTO-892) 18) ☐ Interview Summary (PTO-413) Paper No(s). _____
- 16) ☐ Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948) 19) ☐ Notice of Informal Patent Application (PTO-152)
- 17) ☒ Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO-1449) Paper No(s). 2, 4 20) ☐ Other: _____

Application/Control Number: 09/560,779

Page 2

Art Unit: 2164

DETAILED ACTION

1. This Office Action is the answer to the communication filed on April 28, 2000 , which paper has been placed of record in the file.
2. Claims 1-32 are pending in this application.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 112

3. The following is a quotation of the second paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112:

The specification shall conclude with one or more claims particularly pointing out and distinctly claiming the subject matter which the applicant regards as his invention.

4. Claims 4-13 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, as being indefinite for failing to particularly point out and distinctly claim the subject matter which applicant regards as the invention. The limitation "said non-financial institution location" in claim 4 is lack of antecedent basis.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 102

5. The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of 35 U.S.C. 102 that form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this Office action:

A person shall be entitled to a patent unless --

(a) the invention was known or used by others in this country, or patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country, before the invention thereof by the applicant for a patent.

Application/Control Number: 09/560,779

Page 3

Art Unit: 2164

6. Claims 1-3, 27, 28, 31, and 32 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) as being anticipated by Geer, U.S. Patent No. 5,930,778.

Regarding to claim 1, Geer discloses a method for processing a check deposited at a remote location, remote locations including financial institutions and other locations capable of interfacing with financial institutions, method comprising the steps of:

converting check into electronic check data (column 7, lines 37-60);

electronically exchanging check data with financial institution (column 9, lines 1-10); and

financial institution crediting an account according to check data (column 9, lines 15-18).

Regarding to claim 2, Geer further discloses converting step comprises the steps of: scanning check to create image data, image data representing an electronic image of check and reading image data to create informational data from image data to aid in electronic processing of deposited check (column 8, lines 10-25).

Regarding to claim 3, Geer further discloses converting step further comprises the step of: reading at least a portion of check to determine additional informational data stored in a Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) line (column 7, lines 44-50).

Regarding to claim 27, Geer discloses a system for processing a deposit of check, system comprising:

a remote site for converting check into electronic check data (column 7, lines 4-25, "check payee");

Application/Control Number: 09/560,779

Page 4

Art Unit: 2164

a central site electronically accessible to remote site, central site capable of electronically exchanging check data with financial institution (column 9, lines 10-25, “depository bank”); and

a maker site capable of electronically interfacing with central site to obtain check data and to credit an account according to check data without having to physically receive the check at financial institution (column 9, lines 41-50, “payor bank”).

Regarding to claim 28, Geer discloses remote site further comprises:

a scanner/reader/printer to receive check for processing (column 7, lines 38-41); and

a remote processor electronically and operably couple to scanner/reader/printer, remote processor further comprising computer-executable instructions for interfacing with scanner/reader/printer, computer-executable instructions in conjunction with scanner/reader/printer for performing the steps of (figure 1, item 5):

scanning check to create image data, image data representing an electronic image of check (column 7, lines 38-41);

reading image data to create informational data from image data to aid in electronic processing of depositing of check (column 7, lines 38-61); and

sending check data from remote site to central site over an electronic channel (column 9, lines 1-10).

Regarding to claim 31, Geer further discloses account is credited according to check data without having to receive the physical check at the maker site (column 9, lines 10-18).

Application/Control Number: 09/560,779

Page 5

Art Unit: 2164

Regarding to claim 32, Geer discloses a method for processing a check deposited at a financial institution, method comprising:

converting check into electronic check data (column 7, lines 37-60);

electronically exchanging check data with financial institution (column 9, lines 1-10); and

financial institution crediting an account according to check data (column 9, lines 15-18).

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 103

7. The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. 103(a) which forms the basis for all obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

(a) A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negated by the manner in which the invention was made.

8. Claims 4-13, 29, and 30 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Geer, U.S. Patent No. 5,930,778 in view of Official notice taken by Examiner.

Regarding to claims 4, 5 and 29, Geer further discloses electronically exchanging check data step comprises the steps of: sending check data from non-financial institution location to financial institution over an electronic channel (column 9, lines 10-12). However, Geer does not teach: financial institution verifying check data with account records accessible by financial institution, when check data conforms to account records, financial institution confirming check data to remote location, non-financial institution location processing check data into processed check data in response to confirming step, financial institution acknowledging to remote location

Application/Control Number: 09/560,779

Page 6

Art Unit: 2164

receipt and accuracy of check data, and financial institution sending endorsement and voiding information to remote location. Official notice taken by Examiner that communicating between remote location and financial institution to verify the check data and financial institution sends endorsement and voiding information to remote location are old and well-known in the art of processing checks. Therefore, it would have been obvious to one with ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to include these features above with Geer's for the purpose of verifying the check data at financial institution and remote location can process the check by printing endorsement and voiding information on the check based on endorsement information received from financial institution.

Regarding to claim 6, Geer further discloses remote location processing check data into processed check data step comprises the steps of: endorsing check using endorsement information; and voiding check using voiding information, endorsing and voiding steps creating a processed check (column 11, lines 20-28).

Regarding to claim 7, Geer further discloses endorsing and voiding steps are further comprises of the step of: printing on endorsement and voiding information on check (column 11, lines 38-44).

Regarding to claims 8-11, Official notice is taken that remote location secondly converting processed check data into electronic processed check data by scanning processed check to create image data, image data representing an electronic image of processed check and reading image data to create informational data from image data to aid in electronic processing of

Application/Control Number: 09/560,779

Page 7

Art Unit: 2164

depositing of check, secondly electronically exchanging processed check data with financial institution by sending processed check data from remote location to financial institution over an electronic channel, financial institution verifying processed check data with account records accessible by financial institution; and when processed check data conforms to account records, financial institution secondly confirming processed check data to remote location, are well-known in the art. Remote location such as payer bank must maintain millions upon million copies of checks in their files, and the payor may be required to produce a copy of a check as proof of payment. Thus, it exists a system in some payor banks for storing and electronic exchanging with other financial institutions the electronic image of the processed checks. The process of verifying the received check data at financial institution is also well-known in the art as discussed in claim 4. Therefore, it would have been obvious to one with ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to include the features above with Geer's for the purpose of reducing the costs of processing checks in which the images of checks may completely replace conventional check clearance procedures involving the physical transfer of checks between institutions.

Regarding to claim 12, Geer further discloses crediting account according to check data step further comprises the step of: when financial institution is not the maker bank of check, sending processed check data to maker bank for clearing check (column 9, lines 37-50).

Regarding to claim 13, Geer further discloses sending processed check data to maker bank for clearing check step comprises the steps of: when maker bank is electronic exchange-capable, electronically exchanging processed check data with maker bank (column 9, lines 37-50).

Application/Control Number: 09/560,779

Page 8

Art Unit: 2164

Geer does not disclose when maker bank is not electronic exchange-capable, printing a facsimile of check from processed check data; and forwarding facsimile of check to maker bank. Official notice is taken that sending the facsimile of a processed check to maker bank is old and well-known in the art. Therefore, it would have been obvious to one with ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to include the feature above with Geer's for the purpose of allowing the maker bank still to receive the processed checks via facsimile when the maker bank does not have the electronic exchange capability such as electronic mail exchange or Internet connection.

Regarding to claim 30, Geer further discloses remote site further comprises computer-executable instructions for: in response to central site confirming step, processing check data into processed check data including: endorsing check using endorsement information; voiding check using voiding information, endorsing and voiding steps creating a processed check (column 11, lines 20-28). Official notice is taken that secondly convert processed check into electronic processed check data by scanning processed check to create image data, image data representing an electronic image of processed check and reading image data to create information al data from image data to aid in electronic processing of depositing of check are well-known in the art. Remote location such as payer bank must maintain millions upon million copies of checks in their files, and the payor may be required to produce a copy of a check as proof of payment. Thus, it exists a system in some payor banks for storing and electronic exchanging with other financial institutions the electronic image of the processed checks. Therefore, it would have been obvious to one with ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to include the features

Application/Control Number: 09/560,779

Page 9

Art Unit: 2164

above with Geer's for the purpose of reducing the costs of processing checks in which the images of checks may completely replace conventional check clearance procedures involving the physical transfer of checks between institutions.

9. Claims 14-26 are written in computer-readable medium, that parallel limitation as found in claims 1-13 discussed above, therefore are rejected by the same rationale.

Conclusion

10. Claims **1-32** are rejected.

11. The prior arts made of record and not relied upon is considered pertinent to applicant's disclosure:

Carlson et al. (US 5,053,607) discloses check processing device for processing paper checks at point of sale terminal.

Braun et al. (US 4,321,672) discloses methods and system for effecting electronic funds transfer transaction based upon the use of unit records.

Campbell et al. (5,373,550) discloses the method of transmitting of check images via public switched telephone network.

Cahill et al. (US 5,940,844) discloses method and apparatus for displaying electronic image of a check.

Application/Control Number: 09/560,779

Page 10

Art Unit: 2164

12. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to examiner Nga B. Nguyen, whose telephone number is (703)306-2901. The examiner can normally be reached on Monday-Thursday from 7:30 AM-5:00 PM.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Vincent A. Millin, can be reached on (703)308-1065.

13. **Any response to this action should be mail to:**

Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
c/o Technology Center 2700
Washington, D.C. 20231

or faxed to:

(703) 308-9051, (for formal communications intended for entry)

or:

(703) 308-5397 (for informal or draft communications, please label
"PROPOSED" or "DRAFT")

Hand-delivered responses should be brought to Crystal Park II,
2121 Crystal Drive, Arlington.
VA., Sixth Floor (Receptionist).


Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application or proceeding should be directed to the Group receptionist whose telephone number is (703)305-3900.

Application/Control Number: 09/560,779

Page 11

Art Unit: 2164

Nga B. Nguyen
April 10, 2002



VINCENT MILLIN
SUPERVISORY PATENT EXAMINER
TECHNOLOGY CENTER 2100

Form PTO-1449

Sheet 1 of 2

Applicant: Buchanan et al.

Serial No.: 09/560,779

Att'y Docket No. 7905.15

Filing Date: April 28, 2000

Group: _____

For: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL
INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM
A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION

RECEIVED
AUG - 1 2000
TECH CENTER 2100

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATIONS MADE BY APPLICANT

U.S. Patent Documents

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

Examiner Initial*	Patent Number	Issue Date	Name	Class	Sub Class	Filing Date
<u>nn</u> A1	6,032,137	*Feb. 29, 2000	Ballard	H04L	9/00	May 19, 1998
<u>nn</u> A2	5,999,624	*Dec. 7, 1999	Hopkins	H04K	1/00	Dec. 24, 1996
<u>nn</u> A3	5,930,778	Jul. 27, 1999	Geer	G06F	17/60	Jul. 11, 1996
<u>nn</u> A4	5,895,455	Apr. 20, 1999	Bellinger et al.	G06F	157/00	Aug. 14, 1996
<u>nn</u> A5	5,832,463	Nov. 3, 1998	Funk	G06F	17/60	Mar. 28, 1996
<u>nn</u> A6	5,787,403	Jul. 28, 1998	Randle	G06F	17/60	Mar. 8, 1995
<u>nn</u> A7	5,691,524	*Nov. 25, 1997	Josephson	G06F	17/60	May 15, 1996
<u>nn</u> A8	5,583,759	Dec. 10, 1996	Geer	G06F	17/00	Jul. 27, 1995
<u>nn</u> A9	5,412,190	*May 2, 1995	Josephson et al.	G06F	15/30	Feb. 26, 1993
<u>nn</u> A10	5,373,550	Dec. 13, 1994	Campbell et al.	H04M	11/00	Oct. 13, 1992
<u>nn</u> A11	5,326,959	Jul. 5, 1994	Perazza	G06F	15/30	Aug. 4, 1992
<u>nn</u> A12	5,321,816	Jun. 14, 1994	Rogan et al.	G06F	13/00	Dec. 9, 1992
<u>nn</u> A13	5,237,159	Aug. 17, 1993	Stephens et al.	G06F	15/30	Aug. 17, 1993
<u>nn</u> A14	4,358,671	Nov. 9, 1982	Case	G06K	1/14	Jun. 24, 1979
<u>nn</u> A15	4,321,672	Mar. 23, 1982	Braun et al.	G06F	15/30	Nov. 26, 1979
<u>nn</u> A16	4,264,808	Apr. 28, 1981	Owens et al.	G06F	15/30	Oct. 6, 1978

(*Patent is subject to Terminal Disclaimer)

References Cited by Applicants

While the filing of Information Disclosure Statements is voluntary, the procedure is governed by the guidelines of Section 609 of the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure and 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.97 and 1.98. To be considered a proper Information Disclosure Statement, Form PTO-1449 shall be accompanied by a copy of each listed patent or publication or other item of information and a translation of the pertinent portions of foreign documents (if an existing translation is readily available to the applicant), an explanation of relevance of each reference not in the English language, and should be submitted in a timely manner as set out in MPEP Sec. 609.

NGA B. NGUYEN

11/8/2000

Examiner:

Date Considered:

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; draw line through citation if not in conformance; if corrected, file copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

Form PTO-1449

Sheet 2 of 2

Applicant:

Buchanan et al.

Serial No.:

09/560,779

Att'y Docket No. 7905.15

Filing Date:

April 28, 2000

Group: _____

For:



METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL
INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM
A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION

Examiners will consider all citations submitted in conformance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.98 and MPEP Sec. 609 and place their initials adjacent the citations in the spaces provided on this form. Examiners will also initial citations not in conformance with the guidelines which may have been considered. A reference may be considered by the Examiner for any reason whether or not the citation is in full conformance with the guidelines. A line will be drawn through a citation if it is not in conformance with the guidelines AND has not been considered. A copy of the submitted form, as reviewed by the Examiner, will be returned to the applicant with the next communication. The original of the form will be entered into the application file.

Each citation initialed by the Examiner will be printed on the issued patent in the same manner as references cited by the Examiner on Form PTO-892.

The reference designations "A1," "A2," etc. (referring to Applicant's reference 1, Applicant's reference 2, etc.) will be used by the Examiner in the same manner as Examiner's reference designations "A," "B," "C," etc. on Office Action Form PTO-1142.

GD/ATA/WP/DOCS/SC/AR/KP/2/CONS/US/98-43.149

COPY

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

NGA B. NGUYEN

11/8/2000

Examiner:

Date Considered:

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. In this case, of this form, with next communication to applicant.

Form PTO-1449

Sheet 1 of 2

Applicant: Buchanan, et al.

Serial No.: 09/560,779

Att'y Docket No.: 7905.15

Filing Date: April 28, 2000

For: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT
DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONINFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATIONS MADE BY APPLICANTU.S. Patent Documents

Examiner Initial*	Patent Number	Issue Date	Name	Class	Sub Class	Filing Date
<u>mn</u>	A1 5,175,682	12/29/92	Higashiyama et al.	364	408	12/14/90
<u>mn</u>	A2 5,532,464	07/02/96	Josephson et al.	235	379	04/25/95
<u>mn</u>	A3 5,677,955	10/14/97	Doggett et al.	380	24	04/07/95
<u>mn</u>	A4 5,717,868	02/10/98	James	395	235	03/07/95
<u>mn</u>	A5 5,819,236	10/06/98	Josephson	705	35	06/12/95
<u>mn</u>	A6 5,930,778	07/27/99	Geer	705	45	07/11/96
<u>mn</u>	A7 5,940,813	08/17/99	Hutchings	705	43	07/26/96
<u>mn</u>	A8 6,036,344	03/14/00	Goldenberg	364	408	06/10/98
<u>mn</u>	A9 6,038,553	03/14/00	Hyde, Jr.	705	45	09/19/97
<u>mn</u>	A10 6,105,011	08/15/00	Morrison, Jr.	705	45	03/19/98
<u>mn</u>	A11 6,164,528	12/26/00	Hills et al.	235	379	12/31/96

Foreign Patent Documents

Examiner Initial*	Document Number	Publ. Date	Country or Patent Office	Class	Sub Class	Trans- lation
----------------------	--------------------	---------------	-----------------------------	-------	--------------	------------------

NONE

Examiner: NguyenDate Considered: 6/18/01

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609, draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

RECEIVED

JUN 5 2001

Technology Center 2100

Form PTO-1449

Sheet 2 of 2

Applicant: Buchanan, et al.

Serial No.: 09/560,779

Att'y Docket No.: 7905.15

Filing Date: April 28, 2000

For: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT
DEPOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONOther Documents

(including author (if listed), title, relevant pages, date of publication including at least month and year).

Examiner

Initial*

NONE



RECEIVED
 JUN 5 2001
 Technology Center 2100

References Cited by Applicants

While the filing of Information Disclosure Statements is voluntary, the procedure is governed by the guidelines of Section 609 of the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure and 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.97 and 1.98. To be considered a proper Information Disclosure Statement, Form PTO-1449 shall be accompanied by a copy of each listed patent or publication or other item of information and a translation of the pertinent portions of foreign documents (if an existing translation is readily available to the applicant), an explanation of relevance of each reference not in the English language, and should be submitted in a timely manner as set out in MPEP Sec. 609.

Examiners will consider all citations submitted in conformance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.98 and MPEP Sec. 609 and place their initials adjacent the citations in the spaces provided on this form. Examiners will also initial citations not in conformance with the guidelines which may have been considered. A reference may be considered by the Examiner for any reason whether or not the citation is in full conformance with the guidelines. A line will be drawn through a citation if it is not in conformance with the guidelines AND has not been considered. A copy of the submitted form, as reviewed by the Examiner, will be returned to the applicant with the next communication. The original of the form will be entered into the application file.

Each citation initialed by the Examiner will be printed on the issued patent in the same manner as references cited by the Examiner on Form PTO-892.

The reference designations "A1," "A2," etc. (referring to Applicant's reference 1, Applicant's reference 2, etc.) will be used by the Examiner in the same manner as Examiner's reference designations "A," "B," "C," etc. on Office Action Form PTO-1142.

G:\DATA\WPDOCS\DF\zions\15 ids 1449.doc

Examiner:

Nguyen

Date Considered:

6/18/01

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609, draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

Notice of References Cited	Applicant/Patent Buchanan et al.	Application/Control No. 09/560,779	
	Examiner Nga B. Nguyen	Art Unit 2164	Page 1 of 1

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY ¹	Name	Classification ²	
A	5,930,778	7/1999	Geer	705	45
B	5,053,607	10/1991	Carlson et al.	235	379
C	4,321,672	3/1982	Braun et al.	235	379
D	5,373,550	12/1994	Campbell et al.	235	379
E	5,940,844	8/1999	Cahill et al.	705	45
F					
G					
H					
I					
J					
K					
L					
M					

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY ¹	Country	Name	Classification ²	
N						
O						
P						
Q						
R						
S						
T						

NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS

	Include, as applicable: Author, Title, Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages					
U						
V						
W						
X						

* A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. See MPEP § 707.05(e).

¹ Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates.² Classifications may be U.S. or foreign.



Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

2/16/4
#8 w
9-17-02

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant: Danne L. Buchanan, et al.

Title: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR
PROCESSING FINANCIAL
INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS
PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A
FINANCIAL INSTITUTION

Appl. No.: 09/560,779

Filing Date: 04/28/2000

Examiner: Nga B. Nguyen

Art Unit: 2164

RECEIVED

SEP 05 2002

GROUP 3600

REVOCATION OF PRIOR POWERS OF ATTORNEY BY ASSIGNEE
APPOINTMENT OF NEW POWER OF ATTORNEY BY ASSIGNEE
CHANGE OF CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS

Commissioner for Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

ZIONS BANCORPORATION is the assignee of Application No. 09/560,779 filed April 28, 2000, and all continuing applications thereof, as evidenced by an Assignment included with the filed application and attached hereto.

ZIONS BANCORPORATION, through its duly-delegated representative, hereby revokes all prior Powers of Attorney submitted in this application, and hereby appoints the registered attorneys and agents at Customer Number 22428

22428

22428

PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE

as its principal attorneys to have full power to prosecute this application and any continuations, divisions, reissues, and reexaminations thereof, to receive the patent, to transact all business in the United States Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith, and to have full power of substitution, association, and revocation, including the power to revoke the power of attorney of any associate attorney.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

Please direct all future correspondence concerning this application to:

William T. Ellis
FOLEY & LARDNER
Customer Number: 22428

22428

22428

PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE

Telephone: (202) 672-5485
Facsimile: (202) 672-5399

Executed this 23 day of August, 2002.

ZIONS BANCORPORATION

By:



(Signature)

Danne Buchanan

Executive Vice President

TM PTO-1595 (Modified)
 7-6-93)
 3 No. 0651-0011 (exp. 4/94)
 Copyright 1994-97 LegalStar
 /REV02

RECORDATION FORM COVER SHEET

[Sheet No. 7905.15

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Patent and Trademark Office

PATENTS ONLY

1b settings → → →

To the Honorable Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks: Please record the attached original documents or copy thereof.

Name of conveying party(ies):

Danne L. Buchanan
William R. nald Titus

2. Name and address of receiving party(ies):

Name: ZIONS BANCORPORATION

Internal Address: _____

Street Address: One South Main Street

City: Salt Lake City State: UT ZIP: 84111

Additional name(s) & address(es) attached? ☐ Yes ☒ No

Additional names(s) of conveying party(ies) ☐ Yes ☒ No

Nature of conveyance:

☒ Assignment

☐ Merger

☐ Security Agreement

☐ Change of Name

☐ Other _____

Execution Date: April 28, 2000

Application number(s) or registration numbers(s):

If this document is being filed together with a new application, the execution date of the application is: April 28, 2000

A. Patent Application No.(s)

B. Patent No.(s)

RECEIVED
SEP 05 2002
GROUP 3600

Additional numbers attached? ☐ Yes ☒ No

Name and address of party to whom correspondence concerning document should be mailed:

Name: Kevin K. Johanson

Internal Address: WORKMAN, NYDEGGER & SEELEY

Street Address: 60 East South Temple

1000 Eagle Gate Tower

City: Salt Lake City State: UT ZIP: 84111

6. Total number of applications and patents involved: 1

7. Total fee (37 CFR 3.41):.....\$ 40.00

☒ Enclosed - Any excess or insufficiency should be credited or debited to deposit account

☐ Authorized to be charged to deposit account

8. Deposit account number:

23-3178

DO NOT USE THIS SPACE

Statement and signature.

To the best of my knowledge and belief, the foregoing information is true and correct and any attached copy is a true copy of the original document.

Kevin K. Johanson

Name of Person Signing

Kevin K. Johanson

Signature

April 28, 2000

Date

Total number of pages including cover sheet, attachments, and document: 4

WHEN RECORDED RETURN TO:

Workman, Nydegger & Seeley
1000 Eagle Gate Tower
60 East South Temple
Salt Lake City, Utah 84111

PATENT APPLICATION
Docket No: 7905.15
Express Mail Label No. 550340765US

ASSIGNMENT

We, Danne L. Buchanan of 3362 East Oak Hollow Circle, Sandy, Utah 84093 and William Ronald Titus of 345 North Coventry Circle, Fruit Heights, Utah 84037, respectively, have invented a method and apparatus entitled METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOOSITS PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL INSTITUTION hereinafter called the "invention."

Preferred embodiments of said invention are disclosed in a United States patent application executed concurrently herewith by us and now identified as File No. 7905.15 of the law firm of Workman, Nydegger & Seeley, 1000 Eagle Gate Tower, 60 East South Temple, Salt Lake City, Utah 84111, and filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office as Serial No. _____ on _____. (We hereby authorize the attorneys of Workman, Nydegger & Seeley to insert said serial number and filing date when known.)

The Assignee, ZIONS BANCORPORATION, a corporation of the State of Utah, having a principal place of business at One South Main Street, Salt Lake City, Utah 84111, desires to secure the entire right, title and interest in said invention.

In consideration of One Dollar (\$1.00) and other good and valuable consideration paid to us by the Assignee, the receipt and sufficiency of which we hereby acknowledge, WE HEREBY ASSIGN TO THE ASSIGNEE:

The entire right, title and interest in said invention in the above-identified United States patent application and in all divisions, continuations and continuations-in-part of said application, or reissues or extensions of Letters

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

Patent or Patents granted thereon, and in all corresponding applications filed in countries foreign to the United States, and in all patents issuing thereon in the United States and foreign countries.

The right to file foreign patent applications on said invention in its own name, wherever such right may be legally exercised, including the right to claim the benefits of the International Convention for such applications.

We hereby authorize and request the United States Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, and such Patent Office officials in foreign countries as are duly authorized by their patent laws to issue patents, to issue any and all patents on said invention to the Assignee as the owner of the entire interest, for the sole use and behoof of the said Assignee, its successors, assigns and legal representatives.


We hereby agree, without further consideration and without expense to us, to sign all lawful papers and to perform all other lawful acts which the Assignee may request of us to make this Assignment fully effective, including, by way of example but not of limitation, the following:

Prompt execution of all original, divisional, substitute, reissue, and other United States and foreign patent applications on said invention, and all lawful documents requested by the Assignee to further the prosecution of any of such patent applications.

Cooperation to the best of our ability in the execution of all lawful documents, the production of evidence, nullification, reissue, extension, or infringement proceedings involving said invention.

This assignment and agreement shall be binding upon our heirs and legal representatives.

DATED this 28TH day of April 2000.



DANNE L. BUCHANAN
3362 East Oak Hollow Circle
Sandy, Utah 84093

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

This assignment and agreement shall be binding upon our heirs and legal representatives.

DATED this 25th day of April 2000.

W. B. Titus

WILLIAM RONALD TITUS
345 North Coventry Circle
Fruit Heights, Utah 84037

G:\DATA\WPDOCS\CLIA\KKA\ZIONS\7905-15-agg.doc

BEST AVAILABLE COPY



Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant: Danne L. Buchanan, et al.

Title: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR
PROCESSING FINANCIAL
INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS
PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A
FINANCIAL INSTITUTION

Appl. No.: 09/560,779

Filing Date: 04/28/2000

Examiner: Nga B. Nguyen

Art Unit: 2164

RECEIVED
SEP 11 2002
GROUP 3600

AMENDMENT TRANSMITTAL

Commissioner for Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Transmitted herewith is an amendment in the above-identified application.

- ☐ Small Entity status under 37 C.F.R. § 1.9 and § 1.27 has been established by a Small Entity statement previously submitted.
- ☐ Small Entity statement is enclosed.
- ☒ The fee required for additional claims is calculated below:

	Claims as Amended	Previously Paid For	Extra Claims Present	Rate	Additional Claims Fee
Total Claims:	120	32	88	x \$18.00	\$1584.00
Independents:	12	4	8	x \$84.00	\$672.00
First presentation of any Multiple Dependent Claims:			+	\$280.00	\$0.00
CLAIMS FEE TOTAL:					\$2256.00

- ☒ Applicant hereby petitions for an extension of time under 37 C.F.R. §1.136(a) for the total number of months checked below:

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

<input type="checkbox"/>	Extension for response filed within the first month:	\$110.00	\$0.00
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Extension for response filed within the second month:	\$400.00	\$400.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Extension for response filed within the third month:	\$920.00	\$0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Extension for response filed within the fourth month:	\$1,440.00	\$0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Extension for response filed within the fifth month:	\$1,960.00	\$0.00
EXTENSION FEE TOTAL:			\$400.00
CLAIMS AND EXTENSION FEE TOTAL:			\$2656.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Small Entity Fees Apply (subtract ½ of above):		\$0.00
TOTAL FEE:			\$2656.00

- ☐ Please charge Deposit Account No. 19-0741 in the amount of \$2656.00. A duplicate copy of this transmittal is enclosed.
- ☒ A check in the amount of \$2656.00 is enclosed.
- ☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees which may be required regarding this application under 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.16-1.17, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 19-0741. Should no proper payment be enclosed herewith, as by a check being in the wrong amount, unsigned, post-dated, otherwise improper or informal or even entirely missing, the Commissioner is authorized to charge the unpaid amount to Deposit Account No. 19-0741.

Please direct all correspondence to the undersigned attorney or agent at the address indicated below.

Respectfully submitted,

Date September 4, 2002By 

FOLEY & LARDNER
Customer Number: 22428



22428

PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE

Telephone: (202) 672-5485

Facsimile: (202) 672-5399

William T. Ellis
Attorney for Applicant
Registration No. 26,874



#9A w
9-17-02

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant: Danne L. Buchanan, et al.

Title: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR
PROCESSING FINANCIAL
INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS
PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A
FINANCIAL INSTITUTION

Appl. No.: 09/560,779

Filing Date: 04/28/2000

Examiner: Nga B. Nguyen

Art Unit: 2164

RECEIVED
SEP 11 2002
GROUP 3600

AMENDMENT AND REPLY UNDER 37 C.F.R. §1.111

Commissioner for Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

This communication is responsive to the Office Action dated April 19, 2002,
concerning the above-referenced patent application.

Please amend the application as follows:

In the Claims:

In accordance with 37 C.F.R. 1.121, please substitute for original claims 1-3, 5,
7 and 12, the following rewritten versions of the same claims, as amended. The
changes to the claims are shown explicitly in the attached "Version with Markings to
Show Changes Made."

1. [Amended] A method for processing a deposit by a depositor of one or more
original checks and deposit information at a remote location, said remote location being
capable of interfacing with a financial institution, said method comprising the steps of:

01
10/10/02 11:00:00 00000000 00000000

10/10/02 11:00:00
10/10/02 11:00:00

10/10/02 11:00:00 00000000 00000000

10/10/02 11:00:00

-1-

002.877432.1

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

obtaining at said remote location deposit account information from the deposit information, and electronic check data and original check image data from each of the one or more checks;

electronically exchanging said check data with said financial institution and obtaining an accuracy confirmation of said deposit account information from the financial institution based upon account information associated with the depositor; and

upon the deposit account information being verified as accurate, endorsing and/or voiding the one or more original checks, and creating at the remote location second image data of the one or more original checks that have been endorsed and/or voided; and

sending the second images and said deposit account information to said financial institution.

a1 2. [Amended] The method as recited in claim 1, wherein said obtaining step comprises the steps of:

a) scanning said one or more original checks to create image data, said image data representing an electronic image of each of said one or more checks; and

b) reading said image data to create informational data from said image data to aid in electronic processing of said deposited check.

3. [Amended] The method as recited in claim 2, wherein said obtaining step further comprises the step of:

a) reading at least a portion of said one or more original checks to determine additional informational data stored in a Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) line.

a2 5. [Amended] The method as recited in claim 1, wherein said endorsing and/or voiding step comprises the step of:

receiving endorsement and/or voiding information.

63 7. [Amended] The method as recited in claim 5, wherein said endorsing and/or voiding steps are further comprised of the step of:

a) printing said endorsement and/or voiding information on said check.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

12. [Amended] The method as recite in claim 1, further comprising the step of:
- a) when said financial institution is not the maker bank of said check, sending one of said original check image data or second image data to said maker bank for clearing said check.

PLEASE ADD THE FOLLOWING NEW CLAIMS:

33. A method for processing at a remote site one or more original checks deposited at the remote site, comprising the steps of:
- obtaining electronic deposit data for the one or more original checks;
 - converting data for each of the one or more original checks into electronic check data;
 - creating an image of the one or more original checks to obtain original check image data;
 - receiving endorsement and/or voiding authorization from an external site after receipt of the one or more checks;
 - endorsing and/or voiding the original one or more checks to obtain endorsed and/or voided checks;
 - creating an image of the endorsed and/or voided checks to obtain endorsed and/or voided check image data;
 - electronically associating the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data and the original check image data and the endorsed check image data; and .
 - transmitting the electronically associated electronic check data and the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data directly or indirectly to a maker bank or a print site associated therewith.
34. The method as defined in claim 33, wherein the endorsing and/or voiding step comprises
- sending the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data, and the original check image data to a first processing location;
 - receiving a notice from the first processing location that selected errors were not found in the electronic deposit data and/or electronic check data; and

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

printing said endorsement and/or voiding information on the original check to obtain the endorsed check.

35. The method as defined in claim 33, wherein the transmitting step comprises transmitting both the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data.

36. The method as defined in claim 33, further comprising the step of storing at least one of the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data on a server accessible from the Internet.

37. The method as defined in claim 33, wherein the receiving authorization to endorse and/or void the check includes receiving endorsement information to print on the check from a first processing location.

38. The method as defined in claim 33, further comprising:
determining if endorsement information at the remote site for printing on the check is up-to-date; and
if the endorsement information at the remote site is not up-to-date, then downloading updated endorsement information from a first processing location.

39. The method as defined in claim 33, further comprising the step of comparing an amount of a deposit or an amount of one or more checks against a deposit maximum, and providing a rejection notice if the deposit exceeds the deposit maximum.

40. The method as defined in claim 33, further comprising adding control information to the transmission of the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data preparatory to the transmission step.

41. The method as defined in claim 33, further comprising the step of storing of the original check image data at the remote site.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

42. The method as defined in claim 33, wherein the step of creating an image of the one or more original checks comprises
scanning each original check; and
if the original check is removed before completion of the scanning, then designating the electronic check data associated with the original check image data as invalid.

43. The method as defined in claim 33, further comprising
receiving return check image data for a return check coupled with a reference key for an original deposit transaction and a return reason.

44. The method as defined in claim 43, further comprising
sending the return check image data with the reference key directly or indirectly to the maker bank for re-presentation.

45. The method as defined in claim 33, further comprising determining errors in the electronic deposit data or the electronic check data at the remote site and obtaining correction of the determined errors at the remote site.

46. The method as defined in claim 33, further comprising printing on the original check a reference key prior to creating endorsed and/or voided check image data.

47. A method for processing at a central site an original check deposited at a remote site, comprising the steps of:
receiving electronic deposit data, electronic check data and original check image data for a plurality of checks to be deposited;
identifying errors in the electronic check data;
if no errors are identified, sending endorsement and/or voiding authorization to the remote site;
receiving endorsed and/or voided check image data;
sorting the received data; and

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

d) transmitting associated electronic check data and the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data directly or indirectly to a maker bank or a print site associated therewith.

48. The method as defined in claim 47, further comprising the step of sending the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data and the original check image data and/or the voided check image data to a bank of first deposit.

49. The method as defined in claim 47, wherein the receiving step comprises receiving electronic deposit data, electronic check data and original check image data and/or endorsed and/or voided check image data for a plurality of different deposit transactions, the checks for each one of the plurality of different deposit transactions to be deposited at a different bank of first deposit; and sending each one of a plurality of the different deposit transactions to a respective different bank of first deposit.

ab 50. The method as defined in claim 47, further comprising: reading said original check image data to create image information data; and comparing the image information data to the electronic check data.

51. The method as defined in claim 47, further comprising the step of storing at least one of the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data on a server accessible from the Internet.

83 52. The method as defined in claim 47, further comprising the steps of: determining if the maker bank requires a hard copy of the original check; and if it does, sending the original check image data to a print site for printing and sending directly or indirectly to the maker bank; and if it does not, sending the original check image data directly or indirectly to the maker bank.

53. The method as defined in claim 47, further comprising the steps of: determining if the maker bank requires a hard copy of the original check;

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

C3> if it does, printing a copy of the original check from the original check image data and forwarding directly or indirectly the printed check to the maker bank; and
if not, sending the original check image data directly or indirectly to the maker bank.

54. The method as defined in claim 47, further comprising the steps:
sending a notice to the remote site if the original check image data and/or the endorsed check image data is inaccurate or unreadable; and
receiving corrected original check image data and/or corrected endorsed check image data.

55. The method as defined in claim 47, further comprising after receiving the endorsed and/or voided check image data, sending an electronic notification to the remote site that a deposit is complete.

AS 56. The method as defined in claim 47, further comprising formatting the electronic check data and the original check image data for processing in an accounting system of the bank of first deposit.

52 on 57. The method as defined in claim 47, further comprising the step of determining if a bank of first deposit is a maker bank for the original check; and
if it is the maker bank, then determining if the maker bank requires a hard copy of the original check;
if the maker bank does require a hard copy of the original check, then causing a copy of the original check to be printed; and
if the maker bank does not require a hard copy of the original check, then sending the original check image data to the maker bank.

58. The method as defined in claim 47, further comprising
receiving return check image data for a return check coupled with a reference key for an original deposit transaction.

59. The method as defined in claim 58, further comprising

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

sending the return check image data with the reference key directly or indirectly to the maker bank for re-presentation.

CS 60. The method as defined in claim 59, further comprising
determining if a re-presentation of the returned check requires a duplicate hard copy of the return check or if the original check data image is acceptable for the re-presentation; and
if the original check image is acceptable, obtaining a reference key associated with an original deposit transaction; and
sending directly or indirectly the original check image data and the reference key to the maker bank.

61. A program product for processing at a remote site one or more original checks deposited at the remote site, the program product comprising machine readable program code for causing a machine to perform the following method steps:

AS
obtaining electronic deposit data for the one or more original checks;
converting data for each of the one or more original checks into electronic check data;
creating an image of the one or more original checks to obtain original check image data;
receiving endorsement and/or voiding authorization from an external site after receipt of the one or more checks;
endorsing and/or voiding the original one or more checks to obtain endorsed and/or voided checks;
creating an image of the endorsed and/or voided checks to obtain endorsed and/or voided check image data;
electronically associating the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data and the original check image data and the endorsed check image data; and .
transmitting the electronically associated electronic check data and the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data directly or indirectly to a maker bank or a print site associated therewith.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

62. The program product as defined in claim 61, wherein the endorsing and/or voiding step comprises

sending the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data, and the original check image data to a first processing location;

receiving a notice from the first processing location that selected errors were not found in the electronic deposit data and/or electronic check data; and

printing said endorsement and/or voiding information on the original check to obtain the endorsed check.

63. The program product as defined in claim 61, wherein the transmitting step comprises transmitting both the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data.

64. The program product as defined in claim 61, further comprising the step of storing at least one of the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data on a server accessible from the Internet.

as 65. The program product as defined in claim 61, wherein the receiving authorization to endorse and/or void the check step includes receiving endorsement information to print on the check from a first processing location.

66. The program product as defined in claim 61, further comprising program code to cause the machine to perform the following method steps:

determining if endorsement information at the remote site for printing on the check is up-to-date; and

if the endorsement information at the remote site is not up-to-date, then sending updated endorsement information to the remote site.

67. The program product as defined in claim 61, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the following step of comparing an amount of a deposit or an amount of one or more checks against a deposit maximum, and providing a rejection notice if the deposit exceeds the deposit maximum.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

68. The program product as defined in claim 61, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the step of adding control information to the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data preparatory to the transmission step.

69. The program product as defined in claim 61, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the step of storing of the original check image data at the remote site.

70. The program product as defined in claim 61, wherein the step of creating an image of the one or more original checks comprises
scanning each original check; and
if the original check is removed before completion of the scanning, then designating the electronic check data associated with the original check image data as invalid.

as 71. The program product as defined in claim 61, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the following method step of
receiving return check image data for a return check coupled with a reference key for an original deposit transaction and a return reason.

72. The program product as defined in claim 71, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the following method step of
sending the return check image data with the reference key directly or indirectly to the maker bank for re-presentation.

73. The program product as defined in claim 61, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the method step of determining errors in the electronic deposit data or the electronic check data at the remote site and obtaining correction of the determined errors at the remote site.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

74. The program product as defined in claim 61, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the step of printing on the original check a reference key prior to creating endorsed and/or voided check image data.

57
C6 75. A program product for processing at a central site an original check deposited at a remote site, the program product comprising machine readable program code for causing a machine to perform the following method steps:

receiving electronic deposit data, electronic check data and original check image data for a plurality of checks to be deposited;

identifying errors in the electronic check data;

if no errors are identified, sending endorsement and/or voiding authorization to the remote site;

receiving endorsed and/or voided check image data;

sorting the received data; and

transmitting associated electronic check data and the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data directly or indirectly to a maker bank or a print site associated therewith.

as 76. The program product as defined in claim 75, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the step of

sending the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data and the original check image data to a bank of first deposit.

77. The program product as defined in claim 75, wherein the receiving step comprises

receiving electronic deposit data, electronic check data and original check image data and/or endorsed and/or voided check image data for a plurality of different deposit transactions, the checks for each one of the plurality of different deposit transactions to be deposited at a different bank of first deposit; and

sending each one of a plurality of the different deposit transactions to a respective different bank of first deposit.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

57
C7 78. The program product as defined in claim 75, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the following method steps:
reading said original check image data to create image information data; and
comparing the image information data to the electronic check data.

79. The program product as defined in claim 75, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the step of storing at least one of the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data on a server accessible from the Internet.

58
Q 80. The program product as defined in claim 75, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the steps of:
determining if the maker bank requires a hard copy of the original check; and
if it does, sending the original check image data to a print site for printing and sending directly or indirectly to the maker bank; and
if it does not, sending the original check image data directly or indirectly to the maker bank.

a5 81. The program product as defined in claim 75, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the steps of:
determining if the maker bank requires a hard copy of the original check;
if it does, printing a copy of the original check from the original check image data and forwarding directly or indirectly the printed check to the maker bank; and
if not, sending the original check image data directly or indirectly to the maker bank.

82. The program product as defined in claim 75, further comprising program code for causing a machine to perform the steps of:
sending a notice to the remote site if the original check image and/or the endorsed check image data is inaccurate or unreadable; and
receiving corrected original check image data and/or corrected endorsed check image data.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

83. The program product as defined in claim 75, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the step of after receiving the endorsed and/or voided check image data, sending an electronic notification to the remote site that a deposit is complete.

84. The program product as defined in claim 75, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the step of formatting the electronic check data and the original check image data for processing in an accounting system of the bank of first deposit.

85. The program product as defined in claim 75, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the step of determining if a bank of first deposit is a maker bank for the original check; and

if it is the maker bank, then determining if the maker bank requires a hard copy of the original check;

if the maker bank does require a hard copy of the original check, then causing a copy of the original check to be printed; and

if the maker bank does not require a hard copy of the original check, then sending the original check image data to the maker bank.

86. The program product as defined in claim 75, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the step of

receiving return check image data for a return check coupled with a reference key for an original deposit transaction.

87. The program product as defined in claim 86, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the step of

sending the return check image data with the reference key directly or indirectly to the maker bank for re-presentation.

88. The program product as defined in claim 87, further comprising program code for causing the machine to perform the step of

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

~~determining if a re-presentment of the returned check requires a duplicate hard copy of the return check or if the original check data image is acceptable for the re-presentment; and~~

~~if the original check image is acceptable, obtaining a reference key associated with an original deposit transaction; and~~

~~sending directly or indirectly the original check image data and the reference key to the maker bank.~~

89. A system for processing at a remote site one or more original checks deposited at the remote site, comprising:

a component for obtaining electronic deposit data for the one or more original checks;

a component for converting data for each of the one or more original checks into electronic check data;

a component for creating an image of the one or more original checks to obtain original check image data;

a component receiving endorsement and/or voiding authorization from an external site after receipt of the one or more checks;

a component for endorsing and/or voiding the original one or more checks to obtain endorsed and/or voided checks;

a component for creating an image of the endorsed and/or voided checks to obtain endorsed and/or voided check image data;

a component for electronically associating the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data and the original check image data and the endorsed check image data; and .

a transmitter for transmitting the electronically associated electronic check data and the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data directly or indirectly to a maker bank or a print site associated therewith.

90. The system as defined in claim 89, wherein the component for endorsing and/or voiding sends the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data, and the original check image data to a first processing location, receives a notice from the first processing location that selected errors were not found in the electronic deposit data

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

and/or electronic check data and prints said endorsement and/or voiding information on the original check to obtain the endorsed check.

91. The system as defined in claim 89, wherein the transmitter is programmed to transmit both the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data.

92. The system as defined in claim 89, further comprising a component for storing at least one of the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data on a server accessible from the Internet.

93. The system as defined in claim 89, wherein the component for receiving authorization to endorse and/or void the check receives endorsement information to print on the check from a first processing location.

94. The system as defined in claim 89, further comprising:
a component for determining if endorsement information at the remote site for printing on the check is up-to-date; and
a component for, if the endorsement information at the remote site is not up-to-date, then downloading updated endorsement information from a first processing location.

95. The system as defined in claim 89, further comprising a component for comparing an amount of a deposit or an amount of one or more checks against a deposit maximum, and providing a rejection notice if the deposit exceeds the deposit maximum.

96. The system as defined in claim 89, further comprising a component for adding control information to the transmission of the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data preparatory to the transmission step.

97. The system as defined in claim 89, further comprising a component for storing of the original check image data at the remote site.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

98. The system as defined in claim 89, wherein the component for creating an image of the one or more original checks scans each original check; and if the original check is removed before completion of the scanning, then designates the electronic check data associated with the original check image data as invalid.

99. The system as defined in claim 90, further comprising
a component for receiving return check image data for a return check coupled with a reference key for an original deposit transaction and a return reason.

100. The system as defined in claim 99, further comprising
a component for sending the return check image data with the reference key directly or indirectly to the maker bank for re-presentment.

101. The system as defined in claim 89, further comprising a component for determining errors in the electronic deposit data or the electronic check data at the remote site and obtaining correction of the determined errors at the remote site.

102. The system as defined in claim 89, further comprising a component for printing on the original check a reference key prior to creating endorsed and/or voided check image data.

103. A system for processing at a central site an original check deposited at a remote site, comprising:

- a component for receiving electronic deposit data, electronic check data and original check image data for a plurality of checks to be deposited;
- a component for identifying errors in the electronic check data;
- a component for, if no errors are identified, sending endorsement and/or voiding authorization to the remote site;
- a component for receiving endorsed and/or voided check image data;
- a component for sorting the received data; and

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

~~a transmitter for transmitting associated electronic check data and the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data directly or indirectly to a maker bank or a print site associated therewith.~~

104. The system as defined in claim 103, further comprising
a component for sending the electronic deposit data electronic check data and original check image data to a bank of first deposit.

105. The system as defined in claim 103, wherein the component for receiving receives electronic deposit data, electronic check data and original check image data and/or endorsed and/or voided check image data for a plurality of different deposit transactions, the checks for each one of the plurality of different deposits to be deposited at a different bank of first deposit; and includes a component for sending the checks for each one of a plurality of the different deposit transactions to a respective different bank of first deposit.

106. The system as defined in claim 103, further comprising:
a component for reading said original check image data to create image information data; and
a component for comparing the image information data to the electronic check data.

107. The system as defined in claim 103, further comprising the a component for storing at least one of the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data on a server accessible from the Internet.

as
all > 108. The system as defined in claim 103, further comprising:
a component for determining if the maker bank requires a hard copy of the check, and, if it does, sending the original check image data to a print site for printing and sending directly or indirectly to the maker bank, and if it does not, sending the original check image data directly or indirectly to the maker bank.

109. The system as defined in claim 103, further comprising:

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

~~a component for determining if the maker bank requires a hard copy of the original check, if it does, printing a copy of the original check from the original check image data and forwarding directly or indirectly the printed check to the maker bank, and if not, sending the original check image data directly or indirectly to the maker bank.~~

110. The system as defined in claim 103, further comprising:

a component for sending a notice to the remote site if the original check image data and/or the endorsed check image data is inaccurate or unreadable; and

a component for receiving corrected original check image data and/or corrected endorsed check image data.

111. The system as defined in claim 103, further comprising a component for, after receiving the endorsed and/or voided check image data, sending an electronic notification to the remote site that a deposit is complete.

112. The system as defined in claim 103, further comprising a component for formatting the electronic check data and the original check image data for processing in an accounting system of the bank of first deposit.

95
93 > 113. ~~The system as defined in claim 103, further comprising a component for determining if a bank of first deposit is a maker bank for the original check; and if it is the maker bank, then determining if the maker bank requires a hard copy of the original check; if the maker bank does require a hard copy of the original check, then causing a copy of the original check to be printed; and if the maker bank does not require a hard copy of the original check, then sending the original check image data to the maker bank.~~

114. The system as defined in claim 103, further comprising

a component for receiving return check image data for a return check coupled with a reference key for an original deposit transaction.

115. The system as defined in claim 114, further comprising

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

a component for sending the return check image data with the reference key directly or indirectly to the maker bank for re-presentation.

95
a4
116. The system as defined in claim 115, further comprising
a component for determining if a re-presentation of the returned check requires a duplicate hard copy of the original check or if the original check data image is acceptable for the re-presentation; and if the original check image is acceptable, obtaining a reference key associated with an original deposit transaction and sending directly or indirectly the original check image data and the reference key to the maker bank.

117. A program product for processing a deposit by a depositor of one or more original checks and deposit information at a remote location, said remote location being capable of interfacing with a financial institution, said program product comprising machine readable program code for causing a machine to perform the following method steps of:

95
obtaining at said remote location deposit account information from the deposit information, and electronic check data and original check image data from each of the one or more checks;

electronically exchanging said check data with said financial institution and obtaining an accuracy confirmation of said deposit account information from the financial institution based upon account information associated with the depositor;

upon the deposit account information being verified as accurate, endorsing and/or voiding the one or more original checks, and creating at the remote location second image data of the one or more original checks that have been endorsed and/or voided; and

sending the second images and said deposit account information to said financial institution.

118. A system for processing a deposit by a depositor of one or more original checks and deposit information at a remote location, said remote location being capable of interfacing with a financial institution, comprising:

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

a remote processor for obtaining at said remote location deposit account information from the deposit information, and electronic check data and original check image data from each of the one or more checks;

a communications system for electronically exchanging said check data with said financial institution;

a financial institution processor for verifying accuracy of said deposit account information at the financial institution based upon account information associated with the depositor;

a5 the remote processor, upon the deposit account information being verified as accurate, endorsing and/or voiding the one or more original checks, and creating at the remote location second image data of the one or more original checks that have been endorsed and/or voided; and

the remote processor causing the second images and said deposit account information to be sent to said financial institution.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

REMARKS

Applicant respectfully requests reconsideration of the present application in view of the foregoing amendments and the reasons which follow.

Claims 1-3, 5, 7 and 12 have been amended and claims 4, 6, 8-11 and 13-32 have been cancelled. New claims 117 and 118 represent the program product and system implementations of amended claim 1. Additionally, new claims directed to the operations at a remote site, and new claims directed to the operations at a central site have been added to further protect applicants invention. The invention in a method format is claimed in claims 33-60. The invention in a program product format is claimed in claims 61-88. The invention in a system format is claimed in claims 89-116. Accordingly claims 1-3, 5, 7, 12, and 33-118 are presented for examination.

The present invention is focused on a unique set of operations, electronic queries, and steps creating, using and manipulating check images in order to speed the operation of depositing checks, as well as to reduce the amount of paper flow, handling, storage and returns used in current banking systems. The use of an original check image file and an endorsed check image file in a unique sequence of process steps, a substantial majority of which are implemented by electronic queries and responses in a claimed communication operation, facilitates transactional operations and/or verification and for ultimate transfer throughout the banking system (as contrasted to archival purposes), and is new, unique, and revolutionary in banking circles.

Newly amended claim 1 recites the step of converting at the remote location deposits into electronic data including both deposit information and image data for one or more monetary items associated with the deposit; the step of obtaining an accuracy confirmation of the deposit information and the image data from a financial institution based upon account information associated with the depositor of the deposit; and the step of upon the electronic data being verified as accurate, creating a second image of each of the one or more monetary items associated with the deposits at the remote location, with each of these second images having at least one of endorsement

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

information and voiding information included thereon, and finally crediting an account according to the electronic data.

Likewise, a new claim 33 has been added to focus on the operations of the remote site. This claim includes the steps of obtaining electronic deposit data for one or more original checks; converting data for each of the one or more original checks into electronic check data; creating an image of the original checks to obtain original check image data; receiving at least one of endorsement and voiding authorization from an external site after receipt of the original check by the external site; endorsing and/or voiding the original check to obtain an endorsed check; creating an image of the endorsed and/or voided check to obtain endorsed and/or voided check image data; electronically associating the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data and the original check data and/or the endorsed check image data; and transmitting the electronically associated electronic check data and the original check image data and/or the endorsed check image data directly or indirectly to a maker bank or a print site associated therewith.

Likewise, a set of claims for operations at the central processing site has been provided. Claim 47 comprises the steps of receiving electronic check data and original check image data; identifying errors in the electronic check data; if no errors are identified, sending endorsement and/or voiding authorization to the remote site; receiving endorsed and/or voided check image data; sorting the check data; and transmitting electronically associated electronic deposit data, electronic check data and the original check image data and/or endorsed and/or voided check image data directly or indirectly to a maker bank or a print site associated therewith.

It can be seen that these amended and new claims are directed to transactional and sending operations based on endorsed check image data or original check image data or both.

Referring now to the Examiner's rejection, the Examiner has rejected the claims under both 35 U.S.C. §102(a) or §103 over the Geer Patent Number 5,930,778. This rejection, as it may be applied to the amended and new claims, is respectfully traversed.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

Geer is directed to effecting the expedited submission of checks into a payment system for collection of funds received by a payee such as a telephone company at a remote item capture facility of the telephone company, and then submitting financial information from these items into the payment system to be received by the payee's depository bank. Thus Geer describes a typical lockbox operation for such payees as telephone companies which receive checks associated with a payment stub. See column 6, lines 40-58. As described at column 7, beginning at line 40, a check received at this remote site is scanned by a suitable reader. The step may include a verification by a human operator comparing the electronic data obtained from the scan with the physical check and the payment stub. The data collected from the scan typically will include the MICR data from the MICR lines of the check. In the practice of the Geer patent, the electronic endorsements on behalf of the payee and the depository bank are applied to the electronic record of the check, and a document identification number is generated and added to the electronic record of the check to aid in subsequent location and retrieval of the information. It is noted at column 8, line 10 that it is contemplated to create an image of the check for archival storage 8 prior to possible disposition of the paper instrument 9. It is noted that this image of the check is capable of later retrieval. See column 8, line 23. At column 9, lines 1-4, it is stated that the image of the check may also be transmitted electronically to the depository bank along with other information extracted from the check. It is noted at column 10, lines 1-6 that the image 7 is transferred via the communication link 11 from the payee to 2 to the depository bank 10 for financial information processing and archival storage. Finally, it is stated that the payee's account is credited with the appropriate amounts as such are compiled by the payee. See column 9, lines 14-18. It is stated that the depository bank may sort the various depository information it receives and then send batches of this information into the payment system 12. It is stated at column 9, lines 41-45 that the check information from the payment system reaches the appropriate payor bank 16 for proper debiting the accounts of the checkwriters 1, thus completing the payment cycle.

Referring now to amended claim 1, Geer does not disclose creating a second image of the one or more monetary items associated with the deposit at the remote location, with each of the second images having at least one of endorsement

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

information and voiding information included therein. Additionally, Geer does not disclose electronically exchanging the second images with the financial institution. Additionally, Geer does not disclose verifying the accuracy of the deposit information and the image data at a financial institution based upon account information associated with the depositor of the deposit.

Likewise, referring to claim 33 directed to processing at a remote site, Geer does not disclose the combination of steps with the step included in the combination of receiving at least one of endorsements and voiding authorization from an external site after the receipt of the deposit information by that external site. This step points up the fact that the claimed aspect of the remote site does not independently endorse and void checks in a deposit transaction. Additionally the unique combination of steps includes the step of after endorsing and/or voiding the original check to obtain an endorsed check, "creating an image of the endorsed and/or voided check to obtain endorsed and/or voided check image data" and then "electronically associating the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data and the original check image data and the endorsed check image data." Finally and importantly, there is no step of "transmitting the electronically associated electronic check data and the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data directly or indirectly to a maker bank or a print site associated therewith." This last step clarifies further that the image flow of the check all the way to the maker bank or a printer site associated therewith is a critical component of the inventive banking system. Geer does not disclose any of these steps.

Referring to claim 34, the endorsing and/or voiding step comprises sending the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data, and the original check image data to a first processing location; receiving a notice from the first processing location that selected errors were not found in the electronic deposit data and/or electronic check data; and printing endorsement and/or voiding information on the original check to obtain the endorsed check. Geer does not disclose this process.

Additionally, with respect to claim 36 the step is provided of storing at least one of the original check image data and the endorsed check image data on a server

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

accessible from the Internet. See page 25, lines 13 and page 33, line 1. This concept is not disclosed or suggested by Geer.

The interrelationship of the operation of the remote site with a first processing site is further emphasized in claim 38 wherein it is determined if endorsement information at the remote site for printing on the check is up-to-date; and if the endorsement information at the remote site is not up-to-date, then downloading updated endorsement information from a first processing location. In this regard, see page 16, lines 5-20 and page 17, lines 17-19 of the specification.

Additionally, claim 39 further describes the step of comparing an amount of a deposit or an amount of one or more checks against a deposit maximum, and providing a rejection notice if the deposit exceeds the deposit maximum. In this regard, see the specification at page 16, lines 1-20 and page 29, lines 11-12.

Additionally, referring to claim 40 the step is provided of adding control information to the transmission of the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data preparatory to the transmission step. In this regard, see page 18, lines 7-8 and page 21, lines 4-5.

Referring to claim 41, the step is disclosed of storing the original check image data at the remote site.

Referring to claim 42, the step of creating an image of the original check is defined as comprising scanning the original check and if the original check is removed before completion of the scanning, then designating the electronic check data associated with the original check image data as invalid. In this regard, see the specification at page 25, lines 18-21.

Referring to new claim 43, a further step is provided of receiving return check image data for a returned check coupled with a reference key for an original deposit transaction. In this regard, see the specification at page 27, lines 6-18.

Referring to new claim 44, the step is provided of sending the return check image data with the reference key directly or indirectly to the maker bank for re-

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

presentment. In this regard, see applicant's specification at page 27, lines 19-23 and page 34, lines 4-21.

The foregoing operations and electronic query and response sequences of the remote site within an overall banking system in accordance with the present invention are not disclosed or suggested by the Geer reference.

Referring to new claim 47, this claim is directed to processing at a central site a check deposited at a remote site. Note that Geer does not disclose the concept of using a central processing site. In particular, Geer does not disclose a method sequence of receiving electronic check data and original check image data for a plurality of checks to be deposited, identifying errors in the electronic check data, if no errors are identified, sending endorsement and/or voiding authorization to the remote site; receiving endorsed and/or voided check image data; sorting the received data; and transmitting electronically associated electronic check data and the original check data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data directly or indirectly to a maker bank or a print site associated therewith. Geer simply does not disclose this sequence of operations.

Referring to claim 49, the receiving step is further defined to comprise receiving electronic check data and original check image data for a plurality of different deposits, each one of the plurality of different deposits to be deposited at a different bank of first deposit; and sending each one of the plurality of different deposits to a respective different bank of first deposit. This claim further clarifies a clearinghouse nature of the central site because of the fact that it operates with a plurality of different bank of first deposits. This aspect is not disclosed in Geer.

Referring to claim 51, a further step is provided in the sequence of storing at least one of the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data on a server accessible from the Internet. In this regard, see page 19, line 14; page 25, line 13; and page 31, lines 6-10.

In a further embodiment of the present invention, claim 52 includes the steps of determining if the maker bank requires a hardcopy of the check; and if it does, sending the original image data to a print site; and if not, sending the original check image data directly or indirectly to the maker bank.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

Referring to claim 53, a further embodiment is described that includes the additional steps of determining if the maker bank requires a hardcopy of the check; if it does, printing a copy of the check from the original check image data and forwarding directly or indirectly the printed check to the maker bank; and if it does not, sending the original check image data directly or indirectly to the maker bank.

In new claim 54, a further step is provided of sending a notice to the remote site if the original check image and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image data is inaccurate or unreadable. In this regard, see page 18, lines 21-22.

Referring to new claim 55, an embodiment of the invention is disclosed comprising the sequence of steps including after receiving the endorsed check image data, sending an electronic notification to the remote site that a deposit is complete. In this regard, see page 25, lines 3-8 and page 31, line 10.

Referring to new claim 56, an embodiment of the invention is disclosed including the step of formatting the electronic check data and the original check image data for processing in an accounting system of the bank of first deposit. In this regard, see page 26, lines 3-7.

Referring to claim 57, an embodiment of the present invention is disclosed comprising a sequence of steps including the step of determining if a bank of first deposit is a maker bank for the original check; and if it is the maker bank, then determining if the maker bank requires a hardcopy of the original check; if the maker bank does require a hardcopy of the original check, then causing a copy of the original check to be printed; and if the maker bank does not require a hardcopy of the original check, then sending the original check image data to the maker bank. In this regard, see applicant specification at page 26, lines 8-11 and page 33, line 20.

Referring to new claim 60, the method further includes the steps of determining if a re-presentment of the returned check requires a duplicate hardcopy of the check or if the original check image data is acceptable for the re-presentment, and if the original check image data is acceptable, obtaining a reference key associated with an original deposit transaction, and sending directly or indirectly the original check image data and the reference key to the maker bank.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

The Geer reference does not disclose the concept of the use of a central site much less the various electronic query and response sequence embodiments of the central site disclosed in the claims dependent on independent claim 47.

It is noted that the Examiner has taken official notice of a number of limitations including the verifying check data step and the converting process check data into the electronic check data by scanning to create check image data and image data representing an electronic image of the processed check, and the Examiner has also taken official notice regarding verifying processed check data with account records, printing a facsimile of a check from processed check data when a maker bank is not electronic exchange-capable, and forwarding the facsimile of the check to the maker bank. In accordance with MPEP 2144.03, applicants traverse/challenge these official notice statements based on personal knowledge and request that each point of official notice be supported by a citation to a reference, as set forth by the MPEP Office requirements. This traverse of the official notice is made insofar as these statements of official notice are applied to the claims as amended.

In view of the foregoing amendments and remarks, the application is ready for allowance.

Applicant believes that the present application is now in condition for allowance. Favorable reconsideration of the application as amended is respectfully requested.

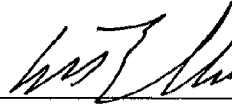
Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

The Examiner is invited to contact the undersigned by telephone if it is felt that a telephone interview would advance the prosecution of the present application.

Respectfully submitted,

Date September 4, 2002

By



FOLEY & LARDNER
Washington Harbour
3000 K Street, N.W., Suite 500
Washington, D.C. 20007-5143
Telephone: (202) 672-5485
Facsimile: (202) 672-5399

William T. Ellis
Attorney for Applicant
Registration No. 26,874

Should additional fees be necessary in connection with the filing of this paper, or if a petition for extension of time is required for timely acceptance of same, the Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge Deposit Account No. 19-0741 for any such fees; and applicant(s) hereby petition for any needed extension of time.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

Version with Markings to Show Changes Made

1. [Amended] A method for processing a [check] deposit by a depositor of one or more original checks and deposit information[deposited] at a remote location, said remote [locations including financial institutions and other locations] location being capable of interfacing with [said] a financial [institutions]institution, said method comprising the steps of:

[a] converting] obtaining at said remote location deposit account information from the deposit information, and [said check into]electronic check data and original check image data from each of the one or more checks;

[b)]electronically exchanging said check data with said financial institution and obtaining an accuracy confirmation of said deposit account information from the financial institution based upon account information associated with the depositor; and

[c] said financial institution crediting an account according to said check data]upon the deposit account information being verified as accurate, endorsing and/or voiding the one or more original checks, and creating at the remote location second image data of the one or more original checks that have been endorsed and/or voided; and sending the second images and said deposit account information to said financial institution.

2. [Amended] The method as recited in claim 1, wherein [converting] said obtaining step comprises the steps of:

a) scanning said [check]one or more original checks to create image data, said image data representing an electronic image of each of said [check]one or more checks; and

b) reading said image data to create informational data from said image data to aid in electronic processing of said deposited check.

3. [Amended] The method as recited in claim 2, wherein said [converting]obtaining step further comprises the step of:

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

a) reading at least a portion of said [check]one or more original checks to determine additional informational data stored in a Magnetic Ink Character Recognition (MICR) line.

5. [Amended] The method as recited in claim [4]1, wherein said endorsing and/or voiding [financial institution confirming said check data] step comprises the [steps]step of:

a) said financial institution acknowledging to said remote location receipt and accuracy of said check data; and]

[b) said financial institution sending]receiving endorsement and/or voiding information[to said remote location].

7. [Amended] The method as recited in claim 5[6], wherein said endorsing and/or voiding steps are further comprised of the step of:

a) printing [on] said endorsement and/or voiding information on said check.

12. [Amended] The method as recite in claim [4]1, [wherein said crediting said account according to said check data step further comprises]further comprising the step of:

a) when said financial institution is not the maker bank of said check, sending one of said original check image data or second image data[said processed check data] to said maker bank for clearing said check.



Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

2164
#1074
9.17.02

Applicants: Danne L. Buchanan et al.

Title: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR PROCESSING
FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS
PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A FINANCIAL
INSTITUTION

Appl. No.: 09/560,779

Filing Date: 04/28/2000

Examiner: Nga B. Nguyen

Art Unit: 2164

RECEIVED
SEP 16 2002
GROUP 3600

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
UNDER 37 CFR §1.56

Commissioner for Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Submitted herewith on Form PTO/SB/08 is a listing of documents known to Applicants in order to comply with Applicants' duty of disclosure pursuant to 37 CFR §1.56. A copy of each listed document is being submitted to comply with the provisions of 37 CFR §1.97 and §1.98.

The submission of any document herewith, which is not a statutory bar, is not intended as an admission that such document constitutes prior art against the claims of the present application or that such document is considered material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR §1.56(b). Applicants do not waive any rights to take any action which would be appropriate to antedate or otherwise remove as a competent reference any document which is determined to be a *prima facie* art reference against the claims of the present application.

09/09/2002 NGBREM1 00000013 09560779

TIMING OF THE DISCLOSURE

01 FC:126

180.00 DP

The listed documents are being submitted in compliance with 37 CFR §1.97(c), before the mailing date of either a final action under 37 CFR §1.113, a notice of allowance under 37 CFR §1.113, or an action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application.

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

RELEVANCE OF EACH DOCUMENT

All of the documents are in English.

Applicants respectfully request that any listed document be considered by the Examiner and be made of record in the present application and that an initialed copy of Form PTO/SB/08 be returned in accordance with MPEP §609.

FEE

A fee in connection with submission of an information disclosure statement under 37 CFR §1.97(c) in the amount of \$180.00 in accordance with 37 CFR §1.17(p) is attached.

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees which may be required regarding this application under 37 CFR §§ 1.16-1.17, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 19-0741. Should no proper payment be enclosed herewith, as by a check being in the wrong amount, unsigned, post-dated, otherwise improper or informal or even entirely missing, the Commissioner is authorized to charge the unpaid amount to Deposit Account No. 19-0741.

Respectfully submitted,

Date September 6, 2002

FOLEY & LARDNER
Customer Number: 22428



22428

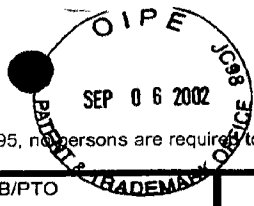
PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE

Telephone: (202) 672-5485

Facsimile: (202) 672-5399

By

William T. Ellis
Attorney for Applicants
Registration No. 26,874



PTO/SB/08 (08-00)

Approved for use through 10/31/2002. OMB 0651-0031

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office: U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Substitute for form 1449B/PTO		Complete if Known	
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT Date Submitted: September 6, 2002 (use as many sheets as necessary)		Application Number	09/560,779
		Filing Date	04/28/2000
		First Named Inventor	Danne L. BUCHANAN et al.
		Group Art Unit	2164
		Examiner Name	Nga B. Nguyen
Sheet	1	of	1
		Attorney Docket Number	057898-0102

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials*	Cite No. ¹	U.S. Patent Document		Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Date of Publication of Cited Document MM-DD-YYYY	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
		Number	Kind Code ² (if known)			
	A1	4,027,142		PAUP ET AL.	05/31/1977	
	A2	4,264,808		OWENS ET AL.	04/28/1981	
	A3	4,650,978		HUDSON ET AL.	03/17/1987	
	A4	4,730,767		GENDRON	03/15/1988	
	A5	4,731,524		BROOKS	03/15/1988	
	A6	4,948,174		THOMSON ET AL.	08/14/1990	
	A7	4,974,878		JOSEPHSON	12/04/1990	
	A8	5,121,945		THOMSON ET AL.	06/16/1992	
	A9	5,237,159		STEPHENS ET AL.	08/17/1993	
	A10	5,265,007		BARNHARD, JR. ET AL.	11/23/1993	
	A11	5,412,190		JOSEPHSON ET AL.	05/02/1995	
	A12	5,532,464		JOSEPHSON ET AL.	07/02/1996	
	A13	5,689,579		JOSEPHSON	11/18/1997	
	A14	5,783,808		JOSEPHSON	07/21/1998	
	A15	5,784,610		COPELAND, III ET AL.	07/21/1998	
	A16	5,793,302		STAMBLER	08/11/1998	
	A17	5,802,498		COMESANAS	09/01/1998	
	A18	5,819,236		JOSEPHSON	10/06/1998	
	A19	5,864,871		KITAIN ET AL.	01/26/1999	
	A20	5,893,078		PAULSON	04/06/1999	
	A21	5,895,453		COOK	04/20/1999	
	A22	5,904,844		STONE	05/18/1999	
	A23	5,917,965		CAHILL ET AL.	06/29/1999	
	A24	5,936,541		STAMBLER	08/10/1999	
	A25	5,963,659		CAHILL ET AL.	10/05/1999	
	A26	5,974,148		STAMBLER	10/26/1999	
	A27	6,019,282		THOMPSON ET AL.	02/01/2000	
	A28	6,029,172		JORNA ET AL.	02/22/2000	
	A29	6,181,837	B1	CAHILL ET AL.	01/30/2001	
	A30	5,619,524		LING ET AL.	04/08/1997	

RECEIVED
SEP 16 2002
GROUP 3300

Examiner Signature	Date Considered
--------------------	-----------------

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

¹ Unique citation designation number. ² See attached Kinds of U.S. Patent Documents. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document.

⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST. 16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 2.0 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, D.C. 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231.



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
 United States Patent and Trademark Office
 Address: COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS AND TRADEMARKS
 Washington, D.C. 20231
 www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
09/560,779	04/28/2000	Danne L. Buchanan	7905-15	5156

22428 7590 12/04/2002

FOLEY AND LARDNER
 SUITE 500
 3000 K STREET NW
 WASHINGTON, DC 20007

EXAMINER

NGUYEN, NGA B


ART UNIT

PAPER NUMBER

3628

DATE MAILED: 12/04/2002

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

Office Action Summary	Application No. 09/560,779	Applicant(s) Buchanan et al.	
	Examiner Nga B. Nguyen	Art Unit 3628	

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address --

Period for Reply
A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY IS SET TO EXPIRE one MONTH(S) FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION.

- Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136 (a). In no event, however, may a reply be timely filed after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- If the period for reply specified above is less than thirty (30) days, a reply within the statutory minimum of thirty (30) days will be considered timely.
- If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, cause the application to become ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133).
- Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing date of this communication, even if timely filed, may reduce any earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).

Status

1) ☒ Responsive to communication(s) filed on Aug 30, 2002.

2a) ☐ This action is FINAL. 2b) ☒ This action is non-final.

3) ☐ Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11; 453 O.G. 213.

Disposition of Claims

4) ☒ Claim(s) 1-118 is/are pending in the application.

4a) Of the above, claim(s) _____ is/are withdrawn from consideration.

5) ☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are allowed.

6) ☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are rejected.

7) ☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are objected to.

8) ☒ Claims 1-118 are subject to restriction and/or election requirement.

Application Papers

9) ☐ The specification is objected to by the Examiner.

10) ☐ The drawing(s) filed on _____ is/are objected to by the Examiner.

11) ☐ The proposed drawing correction filed on _____ is: a) ☐ approved b) ☐ disapproved.

12) ☐ The oath or declaration is objected to by the Examiner.

Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119

13) ☐ Acknowledgement is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d).

a) ☐ All b) ☐ Some* c) ☐ None of:

1. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.

2. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.

3. ☐ Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this National Stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

*See the attached detailed Office action for a list of the certified copies not received.

14) ☐ Acknowledgement is made of a claim for domestic priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(e).

Attachment(s)

15) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)	18) <input type="checkbox"/> Interview Summary (PTO-413) Paper No(s). _____
16) <input type="checkbox"/> Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948)	19) <input type="checkbox"/> Notice of Informal Patent Application (PTO-152)
17) <input type="checkbox"/> Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO-1449) Paper No(s). _____	20) <input type="checkbox"/> Other:

Serial Number: 09/560,779

Page 2

Art Unit: 3628

DETAILED ACTION

1. This Office Action is the answer to the Amendment filed on August 30, 2002, which paper has been placed of record in the file.
2. Claims 33-118 are added. Claims 1-118 are pending in this application.

Restriction/Election

3. Restriction to one of the following inventions is required under 35 U.S.C. 121:
 - I. Claims 1-46, 61-74, 89-102, 117, and 118, drawn to a method for processing checks at a remote location, classified in class 705, subclass 16.
 - II. Claims 47-60, 75-88, and 103-116, drawn to a method for processing checks at a central site, classified in class 705, subclass 42.
4. The inventions are distinct, each from the other because of the following reasons:

Inventions are related as subcombinations disclosed as usable together in a single combination. The subcombinations are distinct from each other if they are shown to be separately usable. See MPEP § 806.05(d). In the instant case, invention has separate utility such as:

Inventions I and II have separate utility such as: the invention I drawn to a method for processing checks at a remote location, in contrast, the invention II drawn to a method for processing checks at a central site. Therefore, the invention I and II are shown to be separately usable.

Serial Number: 09/560,779

Page 3

Art Unit: 3628

5. Because these inventions are distinct for the reasons given above and have acquired a separate status in the art as shown by their different classification, restriction for examination purposes as indicated is proper.

6. Applicant is advised that the reply to this requirement to be complete must include an election of the invention to be examined even though the requirement be traversed (37 CFR 1.143).

7. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to examiner Nga B. Nguyen, whose telephone number is (703)306-2901. The examiner can normally be reached on Monday-Thursday from 8:30 AM-6:00 PM.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Hyung S. Souh, can be reached on (703)308-0505.

Any inquiry of a general nature or relating to the status of this application or proceeding should be directed to the Group receptionist whose telephone number is (703)308-1113.

8. **Any response to this action should be mail to:**

Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks

c/o Technology Center 3600

Washington, D.C. 20231

or faxed to:

(703) 305-7687, (for formal communications intended for entry)

or:

Serial Number: 09/560,779

Page 4

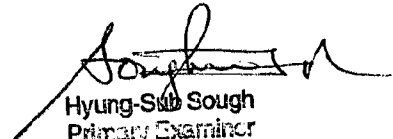
Art Unit: 3628

(703) 308-3961 (for informal or draft communications, please label

"PROPOSED" or "DRAFT")

Hand-delivered responses should be brought to Crystal Park 5, 2451 Crystal Drive,
Arlington, VA, Seventh Floor (Receptionist).

Nga B. Nguyen
November 22, 2002



Hyung-Soo Sough
Primary Examiner



Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

CP/3628
\$

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant: Danne L. Buchanan, et al.
Title: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR
PROCESSING FINANCIAL
INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS
PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A
FINANCIAL INSTITUTION

Appl. No.: 09/560,779

Filing Date: 04/28/2000

Examiner: Nga B. Nguyen

Art Unit: 3628

AMENDMENT TRANSMITTAL

Commissioner for Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

RECEIVED
DEC 26 2002
GROUP 3600

Sir:

Transmitted herewith is an amendment in the above-identified application.

- ☐ Small Entity status under 37 C.F.R. § 1.9 and § 1.27 has been established by a Small Entity statement previously submitted.
- ☐ Small Entity statement is enclosed.
- ☒ The fee required for additional claims is calculated below:

	Claims as Amended		Previously Paid For		Extra Claims Present		Rate		Additional Claims Fee
Total Claims:	133	—	120	=	13	x	\$18.00	=	\$234.00
Independents:	12	—	12	=	0	x	\$84.00	=	\$0.00
First presentation of any Multiple Dependent Claims:						+	\$280.00	=	\$0.00
CLAIMS FEE TOTAL:								=	\$234.00

- ☐ Applicant hereby petitions for an extension of time under 37 C.F.R. § 1.136(a) for the total number of months checked below:

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

<input type="checkbox"/>	Extension for response filed within the first month:	\$110.00	\$0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Extension for response filed within the second month:	\$400.00	\$0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Extension for response filed within the third month:	\$920.00	\$0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Extension for response filed within the fourth month:	\$1,440.00	\$0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Extension for response filed within the fifth month:	\$1,960.00	\$0.00
	EXTENSION FEE TOTAL:		\$0.00
	CLAIMS AND EXTENSION FEE TOTAL:		\$234.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Small Entity Fees Apply (subtract 1/2 of above):		\$0.00
	TOTAL FEE:		\$234.00

- ☐ Please charge Deposit Account No. 19-0741 in the amount of \$234.00. A duplicate copy of this transmittal is enclosed.
- ☒ A check in the amount of \$234.00 is enclosed.
- ☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees which may be required regarding this application under 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.16-1.17, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 19-0741. Should no proper payment be enclosed herewith, as by a check being in the wrong amount, unsigned, post-dated, otherwise improper or informal or even entirely missing, the Commissioner is authorized to charge the unpaid amount to Deposit Account No. 19-0741.

Please direct all correspondence to the undersigned attorney or agent at the address indicated below.

Respectfully submitted,

Date December 20, 2002By 

FOLEY & LARDNER
Customer Number: 22428



22428

PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE

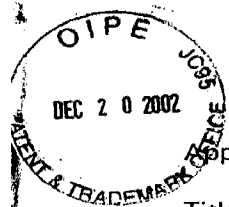
Telephone: (202) 672-5485

Facsimile: (202) 672-5399

William T. Ellis
Attorney for Applicant
Registration No. 26,874

#12 WNW
1-2-03
722OK

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102



IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant: Danne L. BUCHANAN, et al.
Title: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR
PROCESSING FINANCIAL
INSTRUMENT DEPOSITS
PHYSICALLY REMOTE FROM A
FINANCIAL INSTITUTION
Appl. No.: 09/560,779
Filing Date: 04/28/2000
Examiner: Nga B. Nguyen
Art Unit: 3628

RESPONSE TO RESTRICTION AND AMENDMENT

Commissioner for Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

RECEIVED
DEC 26 2002
GROUP 3600

Sir:

This communication is responsive to the Office Action dated December 4, 2002, concerning the above-referenced patent application.

Applicants hereby elect the claims of Group II, claims 47-60, 75-88, 103-116, for prosecution in the subject application.

Applicants, of course, reserve the right to file a divisional application covering the subject matter of the non-elected claims.

Please amend the application as follows:

In the Claims:

Please add the following new claims:

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

8/15/19 119. (New) The method as defined in claim 49, further comprising a system with a plurality of different remote sites, the following steps being performed at each of the plurality of remote sites:

- obtaining electronic deposit data for the one or more original checks;
- converting data for each of the one or more original checks into electronic check data;
- creating an image of the one or more original checks to obtain original check image data;
- receiving endorsement and/or voiding authorization from an external site after receipt of the one or more checks;
- endorsing and/or voiding the original one or more checks to obtain endorsed and/or voided checks;
- creating an image of the endorsed and/or voided checks to obtain endorsed and/or voided check image data;
- electronically associating the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data and the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data; and
- transmitting the electronically associated electronic check data and the original check image data and/or the endorsed and/or voided check image to the central site.

120. (New) The method as defined in claim 119, wherein the transmitting to the central site step comprises transmitting both the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data.

121. (New) The method as defined in claim 119, further comprising:

- determining if endorsement information at one of the remote sites for printing on the check is up-to-date; and

Atty. Dkt. No. 057898-0102

if the endorsement information at the remote site is not up-to-date, then downloading updated endorsement information from the central site.

122. (New) The method as defined in claim 119, further comprising the step of comparing an amount of a deposit or an amount of one or more checks against a deposit maximum, and providing a rejection notice if the deposit exceeds the deposit maximum.

123. (New) The method as defined in claim 119, further comprising receiving return check image data for a return check coupled with a reference key for an original deposit transaction and a return reason.

124. (New) The program product as defined in claim 77, comprising program code at a plurality of different remote sites for causing when executed a machine at the respective remote site to perform the following method steps:

obtaining electronic deposit data for the one or more original checks;

converting data for each of the one or more original checks into electronic check data;

creating an image of the one or more original checks to obtain original check image data;

receiving endorsement and/or voiding authorization from an external site after receipt of the one or more checks;

endorsing and/or voiding the original one or more checks to obtain endorsed and/or voided checks;

creating an image of the endorsed and/or voided checks to obtain endorsed and/or voided check image data;

electronically associating the electronic deposit data, the electronic check data and the original check image data and the endorsed and/or voided check image data; and